

REMAINS OF *Sr. Walter Raleigh*

Viz.

Maxims of State.

Advice to his Son: his Sons advice to his Father.

His Sceptick.

Observations concerning the causes of the Magnificency and Opulency of Cities.

Sir *walter Raleigh's* Observations touching Trade and Commerce with the *Hollander* and other Nations, Proving that our Sea and Land Commodities inrich and strengthen other Countreys against our own.

His Letters to divers Persons of Quality.

The Prerogative of Parliaments in *England*, proved in a Dialogue between a Councillor of State and a Justice of Peace. London. 1678. See Page 159.

Rules for preserving Hereditary of a Kingdom } Conquered. 25.

Kingdoms hereditary are preserved at home by the ordering of a Prince. *ibid*.

Kingdoms new gotten, or purchased by force, are preserved by ten Rules. 25.

REMAINING

St. Walter's

of the

Observations concerning the

the Magnificence and

the

the

the



The Contents.

OF Government.	Pag. 1.
Of Policy.	2.
Of Monarchy.	3.
Of Aristocracy, or Senatorial State.	5.
Of Free State, or Popular State.	6.
Of Tyranny.	7.
Of Oligarchie, or the Government of a few.	ibid.
Of a Common-wealth.	8.
Of Causes of States, and Common-wealths in general.	10.
Of Founding a State.	ibid.
Of Causes preserving State or Common-wealth.	15.
Of Mysteries or Sophisms.	ibid.
Of Axioms or Rules of preserving a State.	20.
Rules for preserving { Hereditary of a Kingdom { Conquered.	25.
Kingdoms hereditary are preserved at home by the ordering of a Prince.	ibid.
Kingdoms new gotten, or purchased by force, are preserved by ten Rules.	25.

The Contents.

<i>Rules Politick of Tyrants.</i>	41.
<i>Sophisms of a barbarous professed tyranny.</i>	42.
<i>Sophisms of the sophistical, or subtile Tyrant, to hold up his State.</i>	46.
<i>Of preservation of an Aristocracy.</i>	52.
<i>Of preservation of an Oligarchie, by Sophisms Rules.</i>	ibid.
<i>Of Conversion of States in general.</i>	59.
<i>Causes of Conversions of States are of two sorts: General and Particular.</i>	ibid.
<i>Particular Causes of Conversion of State, are of two sorts.</i>	60.
<i>Of Sedition.</i>	61.
<i>Causes of sedition are of two sorts.</i>	ibid.
<i>Of Alteration without violence.</i>	64.
<i>A Method, how to make use of the Book before, in the reading of the story.</i>	67.
<i>Old age is not ever unfit for publick Government.</i>	ibid.
<i>Example of the like practice in Charles the Fifth.</i>	68.
<i>Of observation for the Affirmative and the Negative.</i>	ibid.
<i>Of defence for David in marrying Abishag.</i>	
<i>Political Nobility.</i>	
<i>Of Adonijah aspiring to the Kingdom.</i>	71.
<i>Observations.</i>	
<i>Of wayes of such as aspire to the Kingdom, and marks to discern them.</i>	73.
<i>Political Prince.</i>	75.
	The

The TABLE of the Chapters contained in Sir Walter Raleigh's Instructions to his Son.

Chap.	Pag.
V irtuous persons to be made choise of for Friends.	
Great care to be had in the chusing of a Wife.	
Wiseſt men have been abuſed by flatterers.	
Private Quarrels to be avoided.	
Three Rules to be obſerved for the preſervation of a mans eſtate.	
What ſort of ſervants are moſt fit to be entertained.	
Brave rags wear ſoonest out of faſhion.	
Riches not to be ſought by evil means.	
What Inconveniencies happen to ſuch as delight in Wine.	23.
Let God be thy Protector and Director in all thy Actions.	27.
The Sceptick doth neither affirm, neither deny any Poſition, but doubteth of it, and propoſeth his Reason againſt that which is affirmed or denied, to juſtifie his not Conſenting.	
Obſervations concerning the cauſes of the Magnificency and Opulency of Cities.	
Safety for defence of the people and their goods in and near a Town.	

The TABLE.

Causes that concern the Magnificency of a City.

That the Seat of Government is upheld by the two great Pillars, thereof, viz. Civil Justice, and Martial Policy: which are framed out of Husbandry, Merchandise, and Gentry of this Kingdom.

Sir Walter Raleigh's Observations touching Trade and Commerce with the Hollander and other Nations, proving that our Sea and Land Commodities enrich and strengthen other Countreys against our own.

Sir Walter Raleigh's letter to Mr. Secretary Winwood before his Journey to Guiana.

To his wife from Guiana.

To Sir Ralph Winwood.

To his wife copied out of his own handwriting.

To his wife after Condemnation.

To King James at his return from Guiana.

His third Letter to Secretary Winwood.

His Letter to Prince Henry touching the model of a Ship.

His Speech immediately before he was beheaded.

The Prerogative of Parliaments in England, proved in a Dialogue between a Councillor of State and a Justice of Peace.

These



*These Books following are printed
for Henry Mortlock at the Phoenix in
St. Paul's Church-yard, and the White
Hart in Westminster Hall.*

DElights in several shapes, drawn to
the life in fix several shapes, plea-
sant Histories, by that famous Spaniard
Don Mignel de Cervantes Savedra, the
same that wrote *Don Quixote*, in folio.

OPOTONIA, seu *Tractatus de
Tonis in Lingua Graecanica*: per R. Frank-
lin: in 8vo.

The Charitable Physician, & the Cha-
ritable Apothecary, translated out of
French by John Warner, late Practitioner
in Physick and Chyrurgerie, in 4to.

The History of Mary Queen of Scots,
written by Sir William Udall, in 8vo.

The Common-wealth of *utopia*,
written by the Right Honourable
Sir Thomas Moor, sometimes Lord Chan-
cellor of England, in 12mo.

The History of Edward the fifth, and
the then Duke of York his Brother,

with the troublesome and tyrannical Government of *Richard* the third, and his miserable end, written by the Right Honourable Sir *Thomas Moor*, late Lord Chancellor of *England*, in 12mo.

A Choice Manual, or rare and select Secrets in Physick and Chyrurgerie, collected and practised by the Right Honourable the Countess of *Kent* late deceased. Printed in 120 and in 240. Whereunto is added most exquisite wayes of Preservings, Conserving, and Candyng.

The History of the Lives and Reign of *Henry III.* and *Henry IV.* written by Sir. *John Hayward*, and Sir *Robert Cotton*, in 12mo.

The Key of History, or a most Methodical abridgement of the four chief Monarchies, *Babylon*, *Persia*, *Greece*, and *Rome*, being a general and compendious Chronicle from the Flood, written by that excellent and most learned man *John Sleiden*.

Lucans Pharsalia, or the Civil Wars of *Rome* between *Pompey* the Great, and *Julius Caesar* in 10. Books, Englished by *Thomas May*, Esq; whereunto is added a Continuation of the subject of *Lucan's* Historical Poem till the death
of

of *Julius Caesar* by the same Author in 8vo.

The Countrey-mans Recreation, or the art of Planting, Graffing, and Gardening, in three Books, with the perfect platform of a Hop-Garden : to which is added the expert Gardner, and the art of Angling, in 4to.

A Paradise of Prayers, in 12mo.

Mr. *John Marston's* six Playes, in 8vo.

Fragmenta Regalia, or Observations on the late Queen *Elizabeth* her times and Favourites, written by Sir *Robert Naunton* Master of the Court of Wards, in 12mo.

Gayton's Notes upon *Don Quixote*, in folio.

An exact collection of the choicest and most rare Experiments and Secrets in Physick and Chyrurgerie, by *Leonard Phioravant* Knight, and Dr. in Physick and Chyrurgerie: whereunto is added *Paracelsus* his one hundred and fourteen Experiments, in 4to.

Several Poems written by Mr. *Elue-lin* in 8vo.

Martial's his Epigrams translated, with sundry Poems and Fancies, by *R. Fletcher* in 8vo large.

Balm of *Gilead*, by *Jo. Hall* Bishop of *Norwich*, in 12mo.

The

The Treasurers Almanack, in 8vo.

The Art of Memory, in 8vo.

Queen *Elizabeth's* Closet, or Physical Secrets, and supplied with the Child-bearers Cabinet, and Preservative against the Plague, and the Small Pox: Collected by the elaborate pains of four famous Physicians, and presented to Queen *Elizabeth's* own hands, in 4to.

Culpepper's Physical and Chymical way of curing the most difficult and incurable diseases, in 8vo.

A Box of Spikenard, or a little Manual of Sacramental Instruction and Devotion; especially helpful to the people of God, at and about the receiving of the Lords Supper: Written by *Thomas Walmesley* Dean of *Worcester*, in 240.

ΠΑΡΕΚΒΟΛΑΙ, five *Excerptæ* in sex priores *Homeri Iliados Libros*: *Studio Matthæi Day*: in 8vo.

The Oglie of Traytors, including the Illegal Tryal of his late Majestly, in 8vo.

Capital Hereticks, in 12mo.

Leicester's Common-wealth, in 4to.

A Triple Reconciler: Written by *Tho. Fuller* B. of Divinity, in 8vo large.

The Cunning Lovers: A Play in 4to.

The Virgin Martyr: A Play in 4to.

MAXIMS



MAXIMS OF STATE.

OF GOVERNMENT.

GOVERNMENT is of two sorts. 1. *Private*, Of himself, *Sobriety*; Of his Family, called *Oeconomy*.

2. *Publick*, of the Common-wealth, called *Policy*. A man must first Govern himself, ere he be fit to Govern a Family: And his Family, ere he be fit to bear the Government in the Common-wealth.

Of Policy.

Policy is an Art of Government of a Commonwealth, and some part of it according to that State, or form of Government, wherein it is settled for the publick good.

State, is the frame or set order of a Commonwealth, or of the Governours that rule the same, especially of the chief and Sovereign Governour that commandeth the rest.

The State of Sovereignty consisteth in five points.

1. Making or annulling of Laws.
2. Creating and disposing of Magistrates.
3. Power over life and death.
4. Making of War, or Peace.
5. Highest or last appeal.

Where these five are, either in one or in more, there is the State.

These five points of State, rest either in,

1. One *Monarchy* or Kingdom.
2. Some few chief men for virtue and wisdom, called an *Aristocracy*.
3. Many, called a *Free State*, or *Popular State*.

These three sorts of Government have

have respect to the common good, and therefore are just, and Lawful States.

These three degenerate into three other Governments, viz.

1. Monarchy	} into	1. Tyranny.
		2. Oligarchy.
2. Aristocracy		3. Commonwealth or Government of all the common and baser sort, and therefore called a Commonwealth by an usurped Nickname.
3. Popular Estate		

These all respect their own, and not the publick good, and therefore are called Bastard Governments.

I.

Monarchy.

A Monarchy, or Kingdom, is the Government of a State by one Head, or chief, tending to the common benefit of all.

Mo-

Sir Walter Raleigh's

Monarchy, or Kingdoms, are of three sorts touching the right of possession of them, *viz.*

1. *Hereditary*, by descent, as the *English, French, &c.*

2. *Elective*, by suffrage of the other Orders, or some of them, as the *Polonian*.

3. *Mixt*, or of both kinds, *viz.* by descent, yet not tied to the next of blood, as the ancient *Jewish State*.

Monarchies are of two sorts touching their power, or Authority, *viz.*

1. *Intire*. Where the whole power of ordering all *State* matters, both in peace and war, doth by law and custom appertain to the Prince, as in the *English Kingdom*; where the Prince hath power to make Laws, League, and War; To create Magistrates; to pardon life. Of appeal, &c. Though to give a contentment to the other Degrees, they have a suffrage in making Laws, yet ever subject to the Princes pleasure, nor Negative will.

2. *Limited or restrained*, that hath no full power in all the points or matters of State, as the *Military King* that hath not the Sovereignty in time of peace, as the making of Laws, &c. and in time of war, as the *Polonian Kings*.

III.

Aristocracy, or Senatory State.

AN *Aristocracy* is the Government of a Commonwealth by some competent number of the better sort, preferred for wisdom and other virtues for the publick good.

Aristocracies are of three sorts, viz. Where the *Senators* are chosen, for
1. *Virtue*, *Riches*, and the common good, as the *Venetian*.

2. *Virtue*, and the publick good without respect of wealth, as sometimes the *Roman*, when some of the *Senators* were fetched from the plough, and some from the Schools.

3. *Virtue* and wealth, more respecting their private, than their publick good, which inclineth towards an *Oligarchy*, or the Government of the Richer or Nobler sort, as in *Rome* towards the end.

III.

Free State, or Popular State.

THE *Popular State* is the Government of a *State* by the choicer sort of people, tending to the publick good of all sorts; viz. with due respect of the better, Nobler, and Richer sort.

In every *Just State*, some part of the Government is, or ought to be imparted to the people; As in a Kingdom a voice or suffrage in making Laws; and sometimes also, in levying of Armes (if the charge be great, and the Prince forced to borrow help of his Subjects) the matter rightly may be propounded to a Parliament, that the tax may seem to have proceeded from themselves. So consultations, and some proceedings in Judicial matters, may in part be referred to them. The reason, lest seeing themselves to be in no number, nor of reckoning, they mislike the state, or kind of Government: And where the multitude is discontented, there must needs be many Enemies to the present *State*. For which cause, Tyrants,
(which

(which allow the people no manner of dealing in *State* matters) are forced to bereave them of their wits and weapons, and all other means whereby they may resist, or amend themselves, as in *Russland, Turkey, &c.*

IV.

Tyranny.

A *Tyranny* is the swerving, or distorting of a *Monarchy*, or the *Government* of one, tending not to the publick good, but the private benefit of himself and his followers. As in the *Russe* and *Turkish Government*, where the *State* and *wealth* of other orders, are employed only to the upholding of the greatness of the King or Emperour. This is the worst of all the *Bastard States*, because it is the perverting of the best Regiment, to wit, of a *Monarchy*, which resembleth the *Sovereign Government* of God himself.

V.

Oligarchy, or the Government of a few.

A *N Oligarchy* is the swerving, or the corruption of an *Aristocracy*;
or

or the Government of some few, that are
of the Weaker or Nobler sort, with-
out any respect of the publick good.
The chief end of these Governours is
their own greatness and enriching.
And therefore their manner is, to pre-
pare fit means to uphold their Estates.
This State is not wholly so bad, as is
the Tyranny, and yet worse than the
Common-wealth, because it respecteth the
good of a few.

V. L. **A** Common-wealth is the swerving or
deprivation of a Free, or popular
State, or the Government of the whole
multitude of the base and poorer sort,
without respect of the other Orders.

A Common-wealth is the swerving or
deprivation of a Free, or popular
State, or the Government of the whole
multitude of the base and poorer sort,
without respect of the other Orders.
These two States, to wit, The Oli-
garchy, and Common-wealth, are very ad-
verse the one to the other, and have
many bickerings between them. For
that the Richer or Nobler sort, suppose
a right or superiority to appertain unto
them in every respect, because they are
superiour, but in some respects only,
to wit, in Riches, Birth, Parentage, &c.
On the other side, the Common people
suppose, there ought to be an equality
in

in all other things, and some *State matters*; because they are equal with the Rich or Noble, touching their *Liberty*; whereas indeed neither the one nor the other are simply equal or superiour, as touching *Government* and fitness thereunto, because they are such, to wit, because they are Rich, Noble, Free, &c. but because they are *wise, Virtuous, Valiant, &c.* and so have fit parts to *Govern a State*.

The several *States* are sometimes mixed, and inter-wrought one with the other, yet ever so, as that the one hath the preheminent predomination over the other, as in the humours and complexions of the body. So in the *Roman State*, the people had their *Plebiscita*, and gave the suffrage in the election of *Magistrates*: Yet the *Senate* (as the *State* stood) for the most part swayed the *State*, and bare the chief rule. So in the *Venetian State*, the *Duke* seemeth to represent a *Monarchy*, and the *Senate* to be his *Council*: Yet the *Duke* hath no power in *State matters*, but is like a head set on by art, that beareth no brain. And so that *State* is *Senatorial* or *Aristocratical*.

And so that *State* is *Senatorial* or *Aristocratical*.
Causa

Causes of States and Commonwealths in general

Causes of States, or of Commonwealths are of 3 sorts, 1. Measute.

1. Founding, or settling a State; where to be considered. 2. Parts, and their Qualities

2. Preserving a State, 3. Changing, and altering a State.

Founding a State.

In founding a State 1. Proportion
are to be considered 2 things. 2. Parts

Proportion, is a just measure or Moderity of the State, whereby it is framed and kept in that Order, as that neither it exceed nor be defective in his kind, so wit, so that a Monarch be not too Monarchical, nor strict, nor absolute, as the Russe Kings; nor Aristocratical, that is, over-mated or eclipsed by the Nobility, as the Scottish Kingdom, but ever respective to the other degrees. That Aristocracy be not too magnificent nor intire to it self, but com-

communicate with the people some commodities of State or Government, as the *Venetians* and sometimes the *Roman* allowed the people to elect certain Magistrates out of themselves, to have a Tribune, to make *Plebiscita*, &c. So a *Free State* or *Common-wealth* that it be not over popular, *viz.* That it depress not too much the richer, wiser, nor learned sort; but admit them to offices with a *Caution* out of the rules and mysteries of that *State*. That they seek no alteration of the present *State*. The reason, because the moderate *States* in their several kinds (as all other things that observe the mean) are best framed for their continuance, because they give less cause of grudge, envy, and affecting the *wealth*, *Honour*, and *Liberty*, which they see in others that govern the *State*; and so are less subject to stirs and commotions, and easiest kept in their present *State* wherein they are set.

Parts.

THe parts of the *State*, or those Magistrates that bear place or sway in the publick Government.

Parts or partakers of Publick Government, are

1. *Council or Senate*, which consulteth of all matters pertaining to War and Peace, Magistrates, &c. in admitting of whom there ought to be a more special care, that they may be men expert in matter of Policy, because it is their Trade and Vocation, as men use to chuse Pilots and Masters of Ships, such as know the Art of Navigation, and not Husband-men, &c. And so the contrary.

2. *Magistrates and Officers*, which are to be executioners of that which is consulted, and found to be expedient for the *Common-wealth*, wherein are to be observed, the kinds of Magistrates, that they be such as fit that kind of Government; The time of their continuance, and the manner of their election or appointing, by whom, out of whom, and in what manner they be chosen.

3. *Judges*, To determine in *Civil* and *Criminal* matters, where are to be observed, out of whom they are to be chosen; what kinds are necessary, and the manner of Judgement and Judicial proceeding.

In Magistrates are to be observed

I. Kinds of Magistrates, as,

I. Civil.

I. *Superiours* which are to be such and of that kind as agree with the State, as *Consuls* for a year, and not perpetual *Dictatours* in a *Senatory State*. *Prætors*, and *Censors*, that oversee manners & orders of the people.

For a Kingdom, *Leutenants* of *Shires*, *Marshalls*, *Masters* of *Horse*, *Admirals*, &c.

Inferiours, as *conservatours* of *Peace*, *Constables*, &c.

Overseers of youth, that take care for their education for civil and warlike exercise.

B

Clarke

Clarks of the Market that provide for the quantity, and price of victual.

Ediles for Buildings, Streets, Bounds.

Questours, or *Treasurers*, to keep and dispense the publick Treasury.

Actuaries, or *Recorders*, which keep the publick Record.

Gaolers to keep Prisons and Prisoners.

Surveyors of Woods and Fields, &c.

2. Ecclesiastical.

1. As *Bishops* or *Pastors*, *Elders*, *Wardens*.

2. *Time of Magistrates*, whereof some are perpetual, some for a time, viz. for more years, a year, half a year, according to the necessity of the *Common-wealth*, & not perpetual; or at least not *Hereditary* in a Kingdom. Yearly in an *Aristocracy*, or half yearly

yearly in a *Free-State*.

3. *Manner of choice*, by whom and how to be chosen, where especially they are to be chosen by *Suffrage*, and not by *Lot*.

Causes of preserving a State, or Common-wealth.

1. *General*, to all States.

1. *Mysteries, or Sophisms*, 2. *Particular*, for every several State.

In pre-
serving
of States
2. things
requi-
red.

1. *General*, for all States.
2. *Rules, or Actions*, 2. *Particular*, for every State.

Mysteries or Sophisms.

Mysteries, or *Sophisms of State*, are certain secret practices, either for the avoiding of danger, or averting such effects as tend to the preser-

vation of the present *State*, as it is set or founded.

State Mysteries are of two sorts.

I. *General* : That pertain to all *States*; as first, to provide by all means, that the same degree, or part of the *Common-wealth*, do not exceed both in *Quantity* and *Quality*. In *Quantity*, as that the number of the *Nobility*, or of great persons, be not more, than the *State* or *Common-wealth* can bear. In *Quality*, as that none grow in *Wealth*, *Liberty*, *Honours*, &c. more than it is meet for that degree; For as in weights, the heavier weights bear down the Scale: So in *Common-wealths*, that part of degree that excelleth the rest in *Quality* and *Quantity*, overswayeth the rest after it, whereof follow alterations, and conversions of *State*. Secondly, to provide by all means, that the middle sort of people exceed both the extreames, (*viz.*) of *Nobility* and *Gentry*, and the base rascal, and beggarly sort. For this maketh the *State* constant and firm, when both the *Extreames* are tyed together by a middle sort, as it were with a band; as for any conspiracy of the rich and beggarly sort together, it is not to be feared. To these two points, the *Particular*

lar rules in *Sophismes* of every *Common-wealth*, are to be applied.

2. Particular : That serve for preservation of every *Common-wealth*, in that form of *State* wherein it is settled, as in a *Kingdom*. That the *Nobility* may be accustomed to bear the *Government* of the *Prince*; especially such as have their dwelling in remote places from the *Princes* eye, it is expedient to call them up at certain times to the *Princes Court*, under pretence of doing them honour, or being desirous to see, and enjoy their presence, and to have their children, especially their eldest, to be attendant upon the *Prince*, as of special favour towards them and theirs, that so they may be trained up in duty and obedience towards the *Prince*, and be as *Hostages* for the good behaviour, and faithful dealing of their Parents, especially, if they be of any suspected note. To that end serves the *Persian* practice, in having a *Band*, or *Train* of the *Satrapa's* children, and other Nobles to attend the *Court*; which was well imitated by our *Train* of *Henchmen*, if they were of the *Nobler* sort. Again, sometimes to borrow small sums of his Subjects, and to pay them again, that he may after borrow

greater summs and never pay : So in an
Oligarchie, lest it decline to a *Popular*
State, they deceive the people with this
and the like *Sophisms*, (viz.) They
compell their own sort, to wit, the rich
men, by great penalties, to frequent
their Assemblies for choosing of Magi-
strates, for provision of Armour, warlike
Exercises, making an Execution of
Laws, &c. By that means seeming to
bear a hard hand over the richer, but
to suffer the poorer, and meaner sort to
be absent, and to neglect these Assem-
blies under pretence, that they will not
draw them from their business, and pri-
vate earnings : Yet whilst to cite thi-
ther some few of them, (viz.) so ma-
ny as are easily over-matched by the
richer sort, to make a shew, that they
would have the people or poorer sort,
partakers likewise of those matters, yet
terrifying those that come to their As-
semblies, with the tediousness of con-
sultations, greatness of Fines, if they
should mis-do, to the end, to make them
unwilling to come again, or to have to
do with those Consultations, by which
means, the richer sort do still govern the
state, with the peoples liking, and good
contentment.

Axioms.

Axioms or Rules of preserving the State are,

1. General, that serve for all Common-wealths.
2. Particular, that serve for every several State.

General Rules.

THe first and principal Rule of Policy to be observed in all States, is to profess, and practise, and maintain the true worship and Religion of Almighty God prescribed unto us in his word, which is the chief end of all Government. The Axiom, That God be obeyed simply without exception, though he command that which seemeth unreasonable, and absurd to Humane policy; as in the Jews Commonwealth: That all the men should repair yearly to one place to worship God four times, leaving none to defend their coast, though being beset with many Enemies: Nor to sow the seventh year, but to suffer the ground to rest untill'd without respect or fear of famine, &c.

2. To avoid the causes of *Conversion*, whereby States are overthrown, that are set down in the Title of conversions: For that *Common-wealths* (as natural bodies) are preserved by avoiding that which hurteth the health and State thereof, and are so cured by contrary medicines.

3. To take heed, that no *Magistrate* be created or continued, contrary to the Laws and policy of that State. As that in a *Senate*, there be not created a perpetual *Dictator*, as *Cæsar* in *Rome*. In a Kingdom, that there be no *Senate*, or *Convention* of equal power with the Prince in State matters, as in *Poland*.

4. To create such *Magistrates* as love the State as it is settled, and take heed of the contrary practices, as to advance Popular persons in a Kingdom, or *Aristocracy*. And secondly, to advance such as have skill to discern what doth preserve, and what hurteth or altereth the present State.

5. To that end to have certain Officers to pry abroad, and to observe such as do not live and behave themselves in fit sort, agreeable to the present State, but desire rather to be under some other form, or kind of Government.

6. To

6. To take heed that Magistracies be not sold for money, nor bribe in their Offices, which is especially to be observed in that *Common-wealth*, which is governed by a few of the richer sort; For if the Magistrate gain nothing but his *Common Fees*, the common sort, and such as want honour, take in good part that they be not preferred: and are glad rather that themselves are suffered to intend private business. But if the *Magistrate* buy and sell matters, the common people are doubly grieved, both because they are debar'd of those preferments, and of that gain they see to grow by them, which is the cause that the *German Oligarchies* continue so firm, for both they suffer the poorer sort to grow into wealth, and the richer sort are by that means freed, and secured from being under the poor.

7. To take heed that the *State*, as it is settled and maintained, be not over-strict, nor exceed in his kind; (*viz.*) That a Kingdom be not too-Monarchical, nor a *Popular State* too Popular: For which cause it is good, that the Magistrates sometimes yield of their right touching honour, and behave themselves familiarly with those that are equal unto them in other parts, though

inferiour for place and office; And sometimes popularly with the common people, which is the cause that some *Common-wealths*, though they be very simply, and unskilfully set, yet continue firm, because the Magistrates behave themselves wisely, and with due respect towards the rest that are without honour; and therefore some kind of *Moderate Popularity* is to be used in every *Common-wealth*.

8. To take heed of small beginnings, and to meet with them even at the first, as well touching the breaking and altering of Laws, as of other rules which concern the continuance of every several State. For the disease and alteration of a *Common-wealth*, doth not happen all at once, but grows by degrees, which every common wit cannot discern, but men expert in **POLICY**.

9. To provide that that part be ever the greater in number and power, which favours the State as now it stands. This is to be observed as a very Oracle in all *Common-wealths*.

10. To observe a mean in all the degrees, and to suffer no part to exceed, or decay overmuch. As first for pre-fer-

ferments, to provide that they be rather small and short, than great and long; and if any be grown to overmuch greatness, to withdraw or diminish some part of his honour. Where these *Sophisms* are to be practised (*viz.*) to do it by parts and degrees; to do it by occasion, or colour of law, and not all at once. And if that way serve not, to advance some other, of whose virtue and faithfulness, we are fully assured, to as high a degree, or to a greater honour, and to be the friends and followers of him that excelleth, above that which is meet. As touching wealth, to provide, that those of the middle sort (as before was said) be more in numbers; and if any grow high, and over-charged with wealth, to use the *Sophisms* of a *Popular State*, *viz.* to send him on Embassages, and Forreign Negotiations, or imploy him in some Office that hath great charges, and little honour, &c. To which end, the *Edleship* served in some Commonwealths.

11. To suppress the Factions, and quarrels of the Nobles, and to keep other that are yet free from joyning with them in their partakings and Factions.

12. To

12. To increase or remit the Common Taxes and Contributions, according to the wealth, or want of the People and *Common-wealth*. If the people be increased in Wealth, the Taxes and Subsidies may be increased. If they be poor, and their Wealth diminish, specially by dearth, want of Traffick, &c. to forbear Taxes and Impositions, or to take little. Otherwise grudge and discontentments must needs follow. The *Sophisms* that serve for Impositions, are these, and other of like sort, To pretend business of great charge, as War, building of Ships, making of Havens, Castles, Fortifications, &c. for the Common defence; sometimes by Lotteries and like devices, wherein some part may be bestowed, the rest reserved for other expences; but Princely dealings needs no pretences.

13. To Provide that the *Discipline* and *Training* of youth of the better sort be such as agreeth with that *Common-wealth*: As that in a Kingdom, the Sons of Noble men to be attendant at the Court, that they may be accustomed to obedience towards the Prince. In the *Senatory State*, that the Sons of the *Senators* be not idly, nor over-daintily

daintily brought up, but well instructed and trained up in *Learning, Tongues, and Martial Exercise*; that they may be able to bear that place in the *Common-wealth*, which their Father held, and contrariwise, in a *Popular State*.

14. To take heed, lest their *Sophisms*, or secret practises for the continuance and maintenance of that *State*, be not discovered; lest by that means they refuse and disappoint themselves, but wisely used, and be with great secrecy.

Particular Rules.

Rules and Axioms, for } *Hereditary.*
preserving of a King- }
dom. } *Conquered.*

Kingdoms Hereditary, are preserved at home by the ordering,

1. **H**imself, viz. By the tempering and moderation of the Princes Power and Prerogative. For the less and more temperate their Power and State is, the more firm, and stable is their Kingdom and Government; because they seem to be further off from a Master-like, and Tyrannical Empire; and

and less unequal in condition to the next degree, to wit, the *Nobility*, and so less subject to grudge and envy.

2. *Nobility, &c.* By keeping that degree and due proportion, that neither they exceed in number more than the Realm, or State can bear, as the *Scottish* Kingdom, and sometime the *English*, when the Realm was overcharged with the number of *Dukes, Earls*, and other *Nobles*; whereby the *Authority of the Prince* was eclipsed, and the Realm troubled with their *Factions and Ambitions*. Nor that any one excel in Honour, power, or wealth, as that he resemble another King within the Kingdom, as the house of *Lancaster* within this Realm. To that end, not to load any with too much Honour or preferment, because it is hard even for the best, and worthiest men, to bear their greatness, and high Fortune temperately, as appearerh by infinite examples in all States. The *Sophisms* for preventing, or reforming this inconvenience, are to be used with great caution and wisdom. If any great person be to be abated, not to deal with him by *calumniation* or *forged matter*, and so to cut him off without desert, especially if he be gracious among

among the people, after the *Maachiavellian Policy*, which besides the injustice, is an occasion many times of greater danger towards the Prince. Not to withdraw their Honour all at once, which maketh a desperate *discontentment* in the party, and a commiseration in the people, and so greater love, if he be gracious for his virtue, and publick service. Not to banish him into forraign Countreys, where he may have opportunity of practising with *Forraign States*, whereof great danger may ensue, as in the example of *Coriolanus*, *Henry the fourth*, and such like. But to use these, and the like *Sophisms*, viz. To abate their greatness by degrees, as *David*, *Joabs*, *Justinian*, *Belisarius*, &c. To advance some other men to as great, or greater Honour, to shadow, or over-mate the greatness of the other. To draw from him by degrees his friends, and followers by *preferments*, *rewards*, and other good and lawful means; especially, to be provided that these great men be not imployed in great or powerful affairs of the *Common-wealth*, whereby they may have more opportunity to sway the *State*.

3. *People, viz.* So to order and behave himself, that he be loved and revered of the *People*. For that the Prince need not greatly fear home conspiracies, or forraign Invasion, if he be firmly loved of his own people. The reason, for that the Rebel can neither hope for any forces for so great enterprise, nor any refuge, being discovered and put to flight, if the multitude affect their Prince: But the common people being once offended, he hath cause to fear every moving, both at home and abroad. This may be effected by the Prince, if he use means and art of getting the favour of the people, and avoid those things that breed hatred and contempt; *viz.* if he seem as a *Tutor*, or a *Father* to love the people, and to protect them, if he maintain the peace of his Kingdom; For that nothing is more popular, nor more pleasing to the people, than is peace.

4. If he shew himself oftentimes graciously, yet with *State* and *Majesty* to his people, and receive complaints of his suppliants, and such like.

5. If he sit himself sometimes in open Courts, and place of *Justice* that he

he may seem to have a care of Justice among his people. If he bestow many benefits and graces upon that City, which he maketh the seat of his Empire, and so make it sure and faithful unto him, which is fit to be in the middle of his Kingdom, as the heart in the middle of the body, or the Sun in the middle of Heaven, both to divide himself more easily into all the parts of his Dominions ; and lest the furthest parts at one end move, whilest the Prince is in the other. If he go in progress many times to see his Provinces, especially those that are remote.

6. If he gratifie his *Courtiers* and *Attendants* in that sort, and by such means, as that he may seem not to pleasure them with the hurt and injury of his people, as with *Monopolies*, and such like.

7. If he commit the handling of such things as procure envy, or seem grievous, to his Ministers, but reserve those things which are grateful, and well pleasing, to himself, as the *French Kings*, who for that purpose, as may seem, have erected their Court at *Paris*, which acquitteth the Prince from grudge

grudge and envy, both with the Nobles and the people.

8. If he borrows sometimes sums of money of his people, though he have no need, and pay the same justly without defalcation of any part by his Exchequer, or other Officer.

9. If he avoid all such things as may breed hatred or contempt of his person, which may be done, if he shew himself not too light, inconstant, hard, cruel, effeminate, fearful, and dastardly, &c. But contrariwise Religious, Grave, Just, Valiant, &c. Whereby appeareth the false doctrine of the Machiavellian Policy, with far the better means to keep the people in obedience, than love, and reverence of the people towards the Prince.

10. If the Prince be well furnished with Warlike provision, which is to be rumoured, and made known abroad: if it be known, that he is revered, and obeyed by his people at home.

11. If he provide so much as lyeth in him, that his neighbour Kingdoms grow not overmuch in power and Dominion; which if it happen, he is to joyn speedily with other Princes, which
are

are in like danger to abate that greatness, and to strengthen himself and the rest against it. An oversight of the Christian Princes towards the King of Spain.

12. If he get him Intelligencers by reward, or other means, to detect or hinder the designs of that Prince, with whom he hath differences, if any thing be intended against his State. Or at least have some of his own lyding abroad about that Princes Court, under colour of Embassage, or some other pretence; which must be men of skill and Dexterity to serve for that turn.

13. To observe the Laws of his Countrey, and not to encounter them with his Prerogative, nor to use it at all where there is a Law, for that it maketh a secret and just grudge in the peoples hearts, especially if it tend to take from them their commodities, and to bestow them upon other of his COURTIERs and Ministers.

14. To provide especially, That that part, which favoureth the State, as it standeth, be more potent than the other which favoureth it not, or desireth a change.

15. To

13. To make special choice of good and sound men to bear the place of *Magistrates*, especially of such as assist the Prince in his *Counsels*, and *Polities*, and not lean overmuch to his own advice, contrary to the rule of *Machiavil*, who teacheth; That a Prince can have no good counsel, except it be in himself; his reason, because if he use the counsel of some one, he is in danger to be over-wrought, and supplanted by him; and if he counsel with more, Then he shall be distracted with the differences in opinions. As if a Prince of great, or mean wisdom, could not take the Judgement of all his counsellours in any point of Policy, or of so many as he himself thinketh good, and to take it either by word, or in writing; and himself then in private peruse them all, and so after good and mature deliberation, make choice of the best, without any distraction or binding himself to the direction of one. For the Proverb is true, that two eyes see more than one; and therefore the advices, and Consultations of a *Senatory State*, is compared by some to a Feast, or dinner, where many contribute towards the shot, by which means they have more variety of dishes, and so better fare: and yet every man may make choice of that

that dish that serveth him best for his health and appetite.

16. The Prince himself is to sit sometimes in place of publick justice, and to give an experiment of his wisdom and equity, whereby great reverence and estimation is gotten, as in the example of Solomon, which may seem the reason, why our Kings of England had their Kings Bench in Place of publick justice, after the manner of the ancient Kings that sat in the Gate; where for better performing of this Princely duty, some special causes may be selected, which may thoroughly be debated and considered upon by the Prince in Private, with the help and advice of his learned Council, and so decided publickly, as before is said, by the Prince himself; At least, the Prince is to take account of every Minister of publick Justice, that it may be known, that he hath a care of Justice, and doing right to his people, which makes the Justices also to be more careful in performing of their duties.

17. To be moderate in his Taxes, and impositions; and when need doth require to use the Subjects purse, to do it by Parliament, and with their
con-

consents, making the cause apparent unto them, and shewing his unwillingness in charging them. Finally, so to use it, that it may seem rather an offer from his Subjects, than an exaction by him.

18. To stop small beginnings; unto this end to compound the dissensions that rise amongst the Nobles, with caution, that such as are free be not drawn into parts, whereby many times the Prince is endangered, and the whole *Common-wealth* set in a combustion; as in the example of the *Barons War*, and the late Wars of France; which grew from a quarrel betwixt the *Guisean Faction*, and the other Nobility.

19. To stir up the people, if they grow secure, and negligent of Armour; and other provision for the *Common-wealth*, by some rumour or fear of danger at home, to make more ready when occasion requireth. But this seldom to be used, lest it be supposed a false Alarm, when there is need indeed.

20. To have special care, that his children, especially, the heir apparent, have such bringing up as is meet for a King, *viz.* in learning, specially of mat-

matters pertaining to *State*, and in Martial exercise; contrary to the practice of many Princes, who suffer their children to be brought up in pleasure, and to spend their time in hunting, &c. which by reason of their defects, afterwards is a cause of mis-government and alteration of *State*.

II.

Kingdoms new gotten, or purchased by force, are preserved by these means.

First, if they have been Subjects before to his Ancestours, or have the same tongue, manners, or fashions, as have his own Countrey, it is an easie matter to retain such Countries within their obedience, in case the Princes blood of the said Countrey be wholly extinct. For men of the same quality, tongue, and condition, do easily shole, and combine themselves together, so much the rather, if the people of that Countrey have served before, and were not accustomed in their own Liberty, wherein especially is to be observed

served, that the Laws and customs of that purchased Countrey be not altered nor innovated, or at least it be done by little and little. So the *Burgundians* and *Acquitans* were annexed to France. The reason, because partly they have been accustomed to serve, and partly, for that they will not easily agree about any other to be their Prince, if the Blood Royal be once extinguished. As for the invasion of a forraign Countrey, whereunto the Prince hath no right, or whereof the right heir is living: It is not the part of a just Civil Prince, much less a Christian Prince to enforce such a countrey; and therefore, the *Machiavillian* practises in this case, to make sure work by extinguishing wholly the Blood Royal, is lewd and impertinent: The like is to be said of murdering the Natives, or the greatest part of them, to the end he may hold the rest in sure possession. A thing not only against *Christian Religion*, but it is inhumane injustice, cruel, and barbarous.

2. The safest way is, (supposing a right) that some good part of the Natives be transplanted into some other place, and our Colonies, consisting of so many as shall be thought meet,

meet, be planted there in some part of the Province, *Castles, Forts, and Havens*, seized upon, and more provided in fit places, as the manner was of the *Babylonian Monarch*, which Transplanted 10. Tribes of the *Jews*: And of the *Romans* in *France, Germany, Britany*, and other places. The reason:

1. For that otherwise Forces of Horse and Foot, are to be maintained within the Province, which cannot be done without great charge.
2. For that the whole Province is troubled and grieved with removing and supplying the Army with victuals, carriages, &c.
3. For that Colonies are more sure and faithful, than the rest.

As for the Natives that are removed from their former seats, they have no means to hurt, and the rest of the Natives being free from the inconvenience, and fearing that themselves may be so served if they attempt any thing rashly, are content to be quiet.

The *Turks* practise in *Asia*, where the chief grounds and dwellings are possessed by the Souldiers,

C

whom

whom they call *Timariata*.
 That the Prince have his seat and
 his residence, in his new pur-
 chase, especially, for a time, till
 things be well settled; especial-
 ly if the Province be great and
 large, as the *Turks* in *Greece*;
 The reasons;

1. Because the presence of the
 Prince availeth much to keep
 things in order, and get the good
 will of his new Subjects.
2. They conceive that they have re-
 fuge by the Princes presence, if
 they be oppressed by the Lieute-
 nants, and inferiour Gover-
 nours; Where it will be conveni-
 ent for the winning the peoples
 hearts, that some example be
 made of punishing of such as
 have committed any violence or
 oppression.
3. Because being present, he seeth
 and heareth what is thought and
 attempted; and so may quickly
 give remedy to it, which being
 absent, he cannot do, or not do
 in time.
7. If the Prince himself cannot be
 present to reside, then, to take heed
 that the charge of Governing, or new
 pur-

purchase be committed to such as be sure men, and of other meet quality that depend wholly upon the Princes favour, and not to Natives, or other of their own Subjects, that are gracious for their *Nobility*, or *Virtue*; especially, if the *Province* be great, and somewhat far distant, which may soon seduce the unsettled affections of those new subjects; As for such *Governours*, as depend wholly upon the Princes favour, being not born, but created *Noble*, they will not so easily suffer themselves to be won from their duty, and in case they would revolt, yet they are not able to make any great strength, for that the people obey them but as instruments and Ministers, to keep them in Subjection, and not for any ill will.

5. To have the children of the chief Noble men, and of greatest Authority, Hostages with them in safe keeping, the more the better: For that no bond is stronger, than that of nature, to contain the Parents and Allies in obedience, and they the rest.

6. To alter the laws but by degrees one after another, and to make other that are more behooveful for the esta-

blishing of the present Govern-
ment.

6. To keep the people quiet and peaceable, and well affected so much as may be, that they may seem by being conquered, to have gotten a Protector, rather than a Tyrant; For the *Common-People*, if they enjoy peace, and be not distracted nor drawn from their business, nor exacted upon beyond measure; are easily contained under obedience; Yet notwithstanding, they are to be dis-used from the practice of Arms, and other Exercises which increase courage, and be weakened of *Armor*, that they have neither spirit, nor will to rebell.

7. If there be any faction in the Countrey, to take to him the defence of the better and stronger part, and to combine with it, as *Cæsar* in *France*.

8. To look well to the *Borders*, and confining *Provinces*, and if any rule there of great, or equal power to himself, to joyn league with some other *Borderers*, though of less strength, to hinder the attempts (if any should be) by such neighbour Prince. For it happeneth often, that a Countrey infested by one neighbour Prince, calleth in another,

another, of as great, or greater power, to assist and rescue it from the other that invadeth it; So the Romans were called into Greece, by the *Ætolians*; the Saxons, by the *Britains*, the Danes, by the *Saxons*.

9. To leave their Titles and dignities to the Natives, but the command and Authority, wholly to his own.

10. Not to put much trust, nor to practise too often the *Sophisms* of Policy, especially those that appertain to a Tyrannical State, which are soon detected by men of Judgement, and so bring discredit to the Prince and his Policy among the wiser, and better sort of his Subjects, whereof must needs follow very ill effects.

The *Sophisms* of Tyrants, are rather to be known, than practised, (which are for the supporting of their Tyrannical States) by wise and good Princes, and are these, and such like as follow.

Rules of Politick Tyrants.

Rules practised by Tyrants are of two sorts, viz.

1. *Barbarous*, and *Professed*, which is

proper to those that have got head, and have power sufficient of themselves, without others help, as in the *Turkish*, and *Russe* Government.

2. *Sophistical*, and *Dissembled*; As in some States that are reputed for good and lawful *Monarchies*, but inclining to *Tyrannies*, proper to those which are not yet settled, nor have power sufficient of themselves; but must use the power and help of others, and so are forced to be *Politick Sophisters*.

I.

Sophisms of a Barbarous and Professed Tyranny.

TO expell and banish out of his Countrey all honest means, whereby his people may attain to learning, wisdom, valour and other virtues, that they might be fit for that estate, and servile condition. For that these two, learning, and martial exercise, effect two things most dangerous to a Tyranny: *viz.* Wisdom and Valour. For that men of spirit and understanding, can hardly endure a Servile State.

To

To this end, to forbid learning of Liberal Arts, and Martial exercise; As in the *Russe Government*, so *Julian the Apostate* dealt with the Christians. Contrariwise, to use his people to base occupations, and Mechanical Arts, to keep them from idleness, and to put away from them all high thoughts, and manly conceits, and to give them a liberty of drinking drunk, and of other base and lewd conditions that they may be sotted, and so made unfit for great enterprises. So the *Agyptian Kings* dealt with the *Hebrews*; So the *Russe Emperour* with his *Russe* people: And *Charles the Fifth* with the *Netherlanders*, when he purposed to enclose their priviledges, and to bring them under his absolute Government.

2. To make sure to him, and his State, his *Military* men by reward, liberty, and other means, especially, his Guard, or *Pratorian Band*; That being partakers of the spoil and benefit, they may like that State, and continue firm to it; as the *Turk*, his *Fanizaries*; the *Russe*, his *Boyarens*, &c.

3. To unarm his people of weapons, money, and all means, whereby they

may resist his power; And to that end, to have his set and ordinary exactions, &c. Once in two, three, or four years, and sometimes yearly, as the *Turk* and *Russe*; who is wont to say, That his people must be used as his flock of sheep, viz. Their fleece taken from them, lest it overlade them, and grow too heavy; That they are like to his beard, that the more it was shaven, the thicker it would grow. And if there be any of extraordinary wealth, to borrow of them in the mean while, till the Tax come about, or upon some devised matter, to confiscate their goods, as the common practice is of the *Russe* and *Turk*.

4. To be still in Wars, to the end his people may need a Captain: and that his Forces may be kept in practice, as the *Russe* doth yearly against the *Tartar*, *Polonian*, and *Sweden*, &c.

5. To cut off such as excell the rest in wealth, favour or nobility; or be of a pregnant, or aspiring wit, and so are fearful to a Tyrant; and to suffer none to hold office, or any honour, but only of him; as the *Turk* his *Bashas*; and the *Russe* his *Ruezzes*.

6. To forbid Guilds, Brotherhoods, Feastings and other Assemblies among
the

the people, that they have no means or opportunity to conspire, or confer together of publick matters, or to maintain love amongst themselves, which is very dangerous to a Tyrant, the *Russes* practice.

7. To have their Beagles, or listner in every corner, and parts of the Real m; especially, in places that are most suspect, to learn what every man saith, or thinketh; that they may prevent all attempts, and take away such as mislike their *State*.

8. To make Schism, and Division among his Subjects, viz. To set one Noble man against another, and one Rich man against another, that through Faction & disagreement among themselves, they may be weakned, and attempt nothing against him, and by this means entertaining whisperings, and complaints, he may know the secrets of both parts, and have matter against them both, when need requireth. So the *Russe* made the Faction of the *Zemsky*, and the *Oppressi*on.

9. To have strangers for his Guard, and to entertain *Parasites*, and other base and servile fellows, not too wise, and yet subtile, that will be ready for reward to do and execute what he

commandeth, though never so wicked and unjust. For that good men cannot flatter, and wise men cannot serve a Tyrant.

All these practices, and such like, may be contracted into one or two, *viz.* To bereave his subjects of will and power to do him hurt, or to alter the present State. The use is caution, not Imitation.

II.

Sophisms of the Sophistical, or subtle Tyrant, to hold up his State.

1. **T**O make shew of a good King, by observing a temper and mediocrity in his Government, and whole course of life; To which end, it is necessary, That this subtle Tyrant, be a cunning Polititian, or a Machiavilian at the least, and that he be taken so to be, for that it maketh him more to be feared and regarded, and is thought thereby not unworthy for to Govern others.

2. To make shew not of severity, but of gravity, by seeming reverent, and

and not terrible in his speech; and gesture, and habit, and other demeanour.

3. To pretend care of the Common-wealth; And to that end, to seem loth to exact Tributes, and other charges; and yet to make necessity of it, where none is: To that end to procure such War as can bring no danger towards his State, and that might easily be compounded, or some other chargeable business; and to continue it on, that he may continue his exaction and contribution so long as he list. And thereof to imploy some in his publick service, the rest to hoard up in his Treasury, which is sometimes practised even by lawful Princes; as *Edward the Fourth* in his Wars against *France*, when having levied a great sum of money throughout his Realm, especially of the *Londoners*, he went over Seas, and returned without any thing doing.

4. Sometimes to give an account by open speech, and publick writing, of the expence of such Taxes and Impositions, as he hath received of his subjects, that he may seem to be a good husband and frugal, and not a robber of the Common-wealth.

5. To

5. To that end, to bestow some cost upon publick buildings, or some other work for the common good, especially upon the Ports, Forts, and chief Cities of his Realm, that so he may seem a benefactor, and have a delight in the adorning of his Countrey, or doing some good for it.

6. To forbid feasting, and other meetings, which increase love, and give opportunity to confer together of publick matters, under pretence of sparing cost for better uses. To that end the Curfew Bell was first ordained by *William the Conqueror*, to give men warning to repair home at a certain hour.

7. To take heed that no one grow to be over-great, but rather, many equally great, that they may envy and contend one with another; and if he resolve to weaken any of this sort, to do it warily and by degrees; If quite to wreck him, and to have his life, yet to give him a lawful tryal, after the manner of his Countrey; And if he proceed so far with any of great power and estimation, as to do him contumely, or disgrace, not to suffer him to escape, because contumely and disgrace, are things contrary unto Honour,

hour, which great spirits do most desire, and so are moved rather to a revenge for their disgrace, than to any thankfulness, or acknowledging the Princes favour for their pardon or dismissal: True in *Atheists*, but not in true *Christian Nobility*.

8. To unarm his people, and store up their weapons, under pretence of keeping them safe, and having them ready when service requireth, and then to arm with them such, and as many as he shall think meet, and to commit them to such as are sure men.

9. To make schism or division under hand among his Nobility, and betwixt the Nobility and the people, and to set one Rich man against another, that they combine not together, and that himself by hearing the griefs and complaints, may know the secrets of both parts, and so have matter against them both, when it listeth him to call them to an account.

10. To offer no man any contumely or wrong, specially, about womens matters; by attempting the chastity of their Wives or Daughters, which hath been the ruine of many Tyrants, and conversion of their States. As of *Tarquinius*.

quinius, by Brutus, Appius, by Virginius, Pisistratus, by Harmodius, Alexander Medices, Duke of Florence, Aloisus of Placentia, Rodericus, King of Spain, &c.

11. To that end, to be moderate in his pleasures, or to use them closely that he be not seen; For that men sober, or watchful, or such as seem so, are not lightly subject to contempt, or conspiracies of their own.

12. To reward such as achieve some great or commendable enterprise; or do any special action for the Common-wealth, in that manner as it may seem, they could not be better regarded, in case they lived in a Free State.

13. All rewards and things grateful, to come from himself, but all punishments, exactions, and things ungrateful, to come from his Officers, and publick Ministers; And when he hath effected what he would by them, if he see his people discontented withal, to make them a Sacrifice to pacifie his Subjects.

14. To pretend great care of Religion, and of serving God, (which hath been the manner of the wickedest

Ty-

Tyrants) for that people do less fear any hurt from those, whom they do think Virtuous and Religious, nor attempt likely to do them hurt, for that they think that God protects them.

15. To have a strong and sure Guard of forreign Soldiers, and to bind them by good turns, that they having at least profit, may depend upon him and the present State; As *Caligula*, the *German* Guard, where the Nobility are many and mighty. The like practised by Lawful Kings, as by the *French* King.

16. To procure that other great persons be in the same fault, or case with them, that for that cause they be forced to defend the TYRANT, for their own safety.

17. To take part, and to joyn himself with the stronger part; if the Common people, and mean degree be the stronger, to joyn with them; if the Rich and Noble, to joyn with them. For so that part with his own strength, will be ever able to overmatch the other.

18. So to frame his manners and whole behaviour, as that he may seem,

if

if not perfectly good, yet tolerably evil, or somewhat good; somewhat bad.

These Rules of Hypocritical Tyrants are to be known, that they may be avoided, and met withal, and not drawn into imitation.

Preservation of an Aristocracy.

Rules to preserve a *Senatory State*, are partly taken from the common Axioms, and partly from those that preserve a Kingdom.

Preservation of an { *Sophisms.*
Oligarchy, by { *Rules.*

1. **I**N Consultations and Assemblies about publick affairs, to order the matter, that all may have liberty to frequent their Common Assemblies, and Councils; but to impose a Fine upon the richer sort, if they omit that duty. On the other side, to pardon the people, if they absent themselves, and to bear with them under

der pretence, that they may the better intend their Occupations, and not be hindred in their trades, and earnings.

2. In election of Magistrates, and Officers : To suffer the poorer sort to vow, and abjure the bearing of Office, under colour of sparing them, or to enjoyn some great charge, as incident to the Office, which the poor cannot bear. But to impose some great Fine upon those that be rich, if they refuse to bear Office, being Elect unto it.

3. In judicial matters : In like manner to order, that the people may be absent from publick Tryals, under pretence of following their business. But the richer to be present, and to compell them by Fines, to frequent the Court.

4. In Warlike exercise and Arms : That the poor be not forced to have Armor, Horse, &c. under pretence of sparing their cost, nor to be drawn from their trades by Martial exercises ; but to compel the Richer sort to keep their proportion of Armor, Horse, &c. by excessive Fines, and to exercise themselves in Warlike matters, &c.

5. To

5. To have special care of instructing their children in liberal Arts, Policy, and Warlike exercise; and to observe good order and discipline. For as *Popular States* are preserved by the frequency, and Liberty of the people; so this Government of the Richer, is preserved by discipline, and good order of *Governours*.

6. To provide good store of warlike furniture, especially of *Horse* and *Horse-men*, and of *Armed men*, viz. *Pikes*, &c. which are proper to the Gentry, as *Shot*, and light furniture are for a *Popular Company*.

7. To put in practice some points of a *Popular State*; viz. To lade no one man with too much preferment; To make yearly or half years *Magistrates*, &c. For that the people are pleased with such things, and they are better secured by this means from the rule of one. And if any grow to too much greatness, to abate him by the *Sophisms* fit for this State.

8. To commit the Offices and *Magistracies*, to those that are best able to bear the greatest charges for publick matters, which both tendeth to the conservation of this State, and pleaseth the people, for that they reap some

relief and benefit by it.

9. To the same end, To contract marriages among themselves; the rich with the rich, &c.

10. In some things which concern not the *Points*, and *matters of State*, as Electing Magistrates, Making Laws, &c. to give an equality, or sometimes a preferment to the Common People, and not to do, as in some *Oligarchies* they were wont; viz. To swear against the People, to suppress and bridle them; but rather contrary, To minister an Oath at their admission, That they shall do no wrong to any of the People; and if any of the richer offer wrong to any of the Commons, to shew some example of severe punishment.

For other *Axioms* that preserve this State, they are to be borrowed from those other rules that tend to the preserving of a *Popular*, and *Tyrannical State*; for the strict kind of *Oligarchie* is kin to a *Tyranny*.

Preservation of a *Sophisms.*
popular State ; *Rules or Axioms.*

1. **I**N publick Assemblies and Consultations about matters of State, creating of Magistrates, publick Justice, and Exercise of Arms, to practise the contrary to the former kind of Government, to wit, an *Oligarchie*. For in Popular States, the Commons and meaner sort are to be drawn to those Assemblies, Magistrates, Offices, Warlike Exercise, &c. by mulcts and rewards, and the richer sort are to be spared, and not to be forced by fine, or otherwise, to frequent these Exercises.

2. To make shew of honouring and reverencing the richer men, and not to swear against them, as the manner hath been in some Popular State ; but rather to preffer them in all other matters, that concern not the State and publick Government.

3. To elect Magistrates from among the Commons by Lot, or Balloting, and not to chuse any for their wealths sake.

4. To take heed, that no man bear office twice, except it be Military, where the pay, & salary, &c. is to be reserved in
their

their own hands, to be disposed of by a Common Council, &c. And to see that no man be too highly preferred.

5. That no Magistracy be perpetual, but as short as may be, to wit, for a year, half a year, &c.

6. To compel Magistrates, when their time expireth, to give an account of their behaviour and government, and that publickly before the Commons.

7. To have publick Salaries and allowance of their Magistrates, Judges, &c. and yearly dividends for the common people, and such as have most need among them.

8. To make Judges of all matters out of all sorts, so they have some aptness to perform that duty.

9. To provide that publick Judgements and Tryals be not frequent; and to that end to inflict great Fines and other Punishments upon Pettifoggers and Dilators, as the Law of requital, &c. Because for the most part the richer and nobler, and not the Commons are indited and accused in this Commonwealth, which causeth the rich to conspire against the State; whereby many times the popular State is turned into an *Oligarchie*, or some other Government.

ment. Hereto tendeth that Art. of Civil Law, made against Accusers and Calumniators : *Ad Senatus-consultum Turpilianum, l. 1. de Calumniatoribus.*

10. In such free States as are popular, and have no revenue, to provide that publick Assemblies be not often : because they want salary for Pleadors and Orators ; And if they be rich ; yet to be wary, that all the revenue be not divided amongst the Commons. For that this distribution of the Common revenue among the multitude, is like a purse or barrel without a bottom. But to provide, that a sufficient part of the revenue be stored up for the publick affairs.

11. If the number of the poor increase too much in this kind of State, to send some abroad out of the Cities into the next Countrey places, and to provide above all, that none do live idly, but be set to their trades. To this end, to provide that the richer men place in their Farms and Copy-holds, such decayed Citizens.

12. To be well advised what is good for this State, and not to suppose that to be fit for a popular State, that seemeth most popular ; but that which is, be for the continuance thereof : And

to that end, not to lay into the *Exchequer* or *Common Treasury*, such goods as are confiscate, but to store them up as holy and consecrate things, which except it be practised, confiscations, & fines of the *Common people* would be frequent, and so this *State* would decay by weakning the people.

Conversion of States in general.

CONVERSION of a State, is the declining of the *Common-wealth* either to some other form of *Government*, or to his full and last period appointed by *God*.

Causes of Conversions of States are of two sorts: General and Particular.

GENERAL, (*viz.*) 1. Want of Religion: *viz.* of the true knowledge and Worship of *God*, prescribed in his Word; and notable sins that proceed from thence in Prince and people, as in the examples of *Saul*, *Uzziah*, the Jewish State, the four Monarchies, and all other.

2. Want

2. Want of Wisdom and good Counsell to keep the State, the Prince, Nobles, and people in good temper, and due proportion, according to their several order and degrees.

3. Want of Justice either in administration (as ill Laws, or ill Magistrates) or in the execution, as rewards not given where they should be, or there bestowed where they should not be, or punishments not inflicted where they should be.

4. Want of power and sufficiency to maintain and defend it-self, viz. Of provision, as Armor, Money, Captains, Soldiers, &c. Execution, when the means or provision is not used, or ill used.

5. *Particular*: To be noted and collected out of the contraries of those rules, that are prescribed for the preservation of the Common-wealth.

Particular causes of Conversion of States, are of two sorts.

1. **F**orreign: By the over-greatness of invasion of some forreign Kingdom or other State of meaner power,

power, having a part within our own, which are to be prevented by the providence of the chief, and rules of policy for the preserving of every State; This falleth out very seldome for the great difficulty to overthrow a forreign State.

2. Dome-
stick.

Sedition or open violence by the stronger part.
Alteration without violence.

Sedition.

S*edition* is a power of inferiours opposing it self with force of Arms against the superiour power. *Quasi ditio secedens.*

causes of Sedition are of
two sorts.

Liberty.

I.
Gene-
ral.

Riches.

Liberty. **W**hen they, that are of equal quality in a Commonwealth, or do take themselves so to be, are not regarded equally in all, or in any of these three.

Or, when they are

D 10

so unequal in quality, or take themselves so to be, are regarded but equally, or with less respect than those that be of less defect in these three things, or in any of them.

Honour.

1. **I**N the Chief: Covetousness or oppression, by the Magistrate or higher Power, (*viz.*) when the Magistrates, especially the Chief, encreaseth his substance and revenue beyond measure, (either with the publick or private calamity, whereby the Governours grow to quarrel among themselves, as in *Oligarchies*) or the other degrees conspire together, and make quarrel against the Chief, as in Kingdoms: The examples of *Wat Tyler*, *Jack Straw*, &c.

2. *In the Chief*: Injury, when great Spirits, and of great power, are greatly wronged & dishonoured, or take themselves so to be, as *Coriolanus*, *Cyrus minor*, Earl of *Warwick*. In which causes the best way is to decide the wrong.

3. Preferment, or want of preferment; wherein some have over much,
and

and so wax proud and aspire higher : or have more or less than they deserve, as they suppose, and so in envy and disdain, seek Innovation by open Faction, so *Cæsar*, &c.

4. Some great necessity or calamity : So *Xerxes* after the foil of his great Army. And *Senacherib* after the loss of 185000. in one night.

1. **E** Nvy, when the chief exceeds the mediocrity before mentioned, and so provoketh the Nobility, and other degrees, to conspire against him, as *Brutus*, *Cassius*, &c. against *Cæsar*.

2.
Parti-
cular.

2. Fear, viz. Of danger when one or more dispatch the Prince by secret practice or force, to prevent his own danger, as *Artabanus* did *Xerxes*.

Chief.

3. Lust or Lechery, as *Tarquinius Superbus*, by *Brutus*; *Pisistratida*, by *Armodius*; *Appius* by *Virginus*.

4. Contempt, For vile quality and base behaviour, as *Sardanapalus* by *Arbaces*, *Dionysius* the younger by *Dion*.

Other de-
grees.

5. *Contumely*; when some great disgrace is done to some of great Spirit, who standeth upon his honour and reputation, as *Caligula* by *Chæreas*.

Other de-
grees.

6. Hope of *Advancement*, or some great profit, as *Mithridates*, *Anobarbanes*.

Alteration without violence.

CAuses of alteration without violence are; 1. *Excess* of the State; when by degrees the State groweth from that temper and mediocrity wherein it was, or should have been settled, and exceedeth in power, riches, and absoluteness in his kind, by the ambition and covetousness of the chief, immoderate taxes, and impositions, &c. applying all to his own benefit, without respect of other degrees, and so in the end changeth it self into another State or form of Government, as a Kingdom into a Tyranny, an *Oligarchy* into an *Aristocracy*.

2. *Excess*, of some one or more in the Common-wealth; viz. When some one or more in a Common-wealth grow

grow to an excellency or excess above the rest, either in honour, wealth, or virtue; and so by permission and popular favour, are advanced to the Sovereignty; By which means, popular States grow into *Oligarchies*; and *Oligarchies* and *Aristocracies* into *Monarchies*. For which cause the *Athenians* and some other free States, made their Laws of *Ostracismos*, to banish any for a time that should excell, though it were in virtue, to prevent the alteration of their State; Which because it is an unjust Law, 'tis better to take heed at the beginning to prevent the means, that none should grow to that height and excellency, than to use so sharp and unjust a remedy.

F I N I S,

1941

100

1

1950

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

10. The following is a list of the names of the persons who have been appointed to the various committees of the Board of Directors of the City of New York, for the year 1911:

1915-16-17-18-19-20-21-22-23-24-25-26-27-28-29-30-31-32-33-34-35-36-37-38-39-40-41-42-43-44-45-46-47-48-49-50-51-52-53-54-55-56-57-58-59-60-61-62-63-64-65-66-67-68-69-70-71-72-73-74-75-76-77-78-79-80-81-82-83-84-85-86-87-88-89-90-91-92-93-94-95-96-97-98-99-100-101-102-103-104-105-106-107-108-109-110-111-112-113-114-115-116-117-118-119-120-121-122-123-124-125-126-127-128-129-130-131-132-133-134-135-136-137-138-139-140-141-142-143-144-145-146-147-148-149-150-151-152-153-154-155-156-157-158-159-160-161-162-163-164-165-166-167-168-169-170-171-172-173-174-175-176-177-178-179-180-181-182-183-184-185-186-187-188-189-190-191-192-193-194-195-196-197-198-199-200-201-202-203-204-205-206-207-208-209-210-211-212-213-214-215-216-217-218-219-220-221-222-223-224-225-226-227-228-229-230-231-232-233-234-235-236-237-238-239-240-241-242-243-244-245-246-247-248-249-250-251-252-253-254-255-256-257-258-259-260-261-262-263-264-265-266-267-268-269-270-271-272-273-274-275-276-277-278-279-280-281-282-283-284-285-286-287-288-289-290-291-292-293-294-295-296-297-298-299-300-301-302-303-304-305-306-307-308-309-310-311-312-313-314-315-316-317-318-319-320-321-322-323-324-325-326-327-328-329-330-331-332-333-334-335-336-337-338-339-340-341-342-343-344-345-346-347-348-349-350-351-352-353-354-355-356-357-358-359-360-361-362-363-364-365-366-367-368-369-370-371-372-373-374-375-376-377-378-379-380-381-382-383-384-385-386-387-388-389-390-391-392-393-394-395-396-397-398-399-400-401-402-403-404-405-406-407-408-409-410-411-412-413-414-415-416-417-418-419-420-421-422-423-424-425-426-427-428-429-430-431-432-433-434-435-436-437-438-439-440-441-442-443-444-445-446-447-448-449-450-451-452-453-454-455-456-457-458-459-460-461-462-463-464-465-466-467-468-469-470-471-472-473-474-475-476-477-478-479-480-481-482-483-484-485-486-487-488-489-490-491-492-493-494-495-496-497-498-499-500-501-502-503-504-505-506-507-508-509-510-511-512-513-514-515-516-517-518-519-520-521-522-523-524-525-526-527-528-529-530-531-532-533-534-535-536-537-538-539-540-541-542-543-544-545-546-547-548-549-550-551-552-553-554-555-556-557-558-559-560-561-562-563-564-565-566-567-568-569-570-571-572-573-574-575-576-577-578-579-580-581-582-583-584-585-586-587-588-589-590-591-592-593-594-595-596-597-598-599-600-601-602-603-604-605-606-607-608-609-610-611-612-613-614-615-616-617-618-619-620-621-622-623-624-625-626-627-628-629-630-631-632-633-634-635-636-637-638-639-640-641-642-643-644-645-646-647-648-649-650-651-652-653-654-655-656-657-658-659-660-661-662-663-664-665-666-667-668-669-670-671-672-673-674-675-676-677-678-679-680-681-682-683-684-685-686-687-688-689-690-691-692-693-694-695-696-697-698-699-700-701-702-703-704-705-706-707-708-709-710-711-712-713-714-715-716-717-718-719-720-721-722-723-724-725-726-727-728-729-730-731-732-733-734-735-736-737-738-739-740-741-742-743-744-745-746-747-748-749-750-751-752-753-754-755-756-757-758-759-760-761-762-763-764-765-766-767-768-769-770-771-772-773-774-775-776-777-778-779-780-781-782-783-784-785-786-787-788-789-790-791-792-793-794-795-796-797-798-799-800-801-802-803-804-805-806-807-808-809-810-811-812-813-814-815-816-817-818-819-820-821-822-823-824-825-826-827-828-829-830-831-832-833-834-835-836-837-838-839-840-841-842-843-844-845-846-847-848-849-850-851-852-853-854-855-856-857-858-859-860-861-862-863-864-865-866-867-868-869-870-871-872-873-874-875-876-877-878-879-880-881-882-883-884-885-886-887-888-889-890-891-892-893-894-895-896-897-898-899-900-901-902-903-904-905-906-907-908-909-910-911-912-913-914-915-916-917-918-919-920-921-922-923-924-925-926-927-928-929-930-931-932-933-934-935-936-937-938-939-940-941-942-943-944-945-946-947-948-949-950-951-952-953-954-955-956-957-958-959-960-961-962-963-964-965-966-967-968-969-970-971-972-973-974-975-976-977-978-979-980-981-982-983-984-985-986-987-988-989-990-991-992-993-994-995-996-997-998-999-1000-1001-1002-1003-1004-1005-1006-1007-1008-1009-1010-1011-1012-1013-1014-1015-1016-1017-1018-1019-1020-1021-1022-1023-1024-1025-1026-1027-1028-1029-1030-1031-1032-1033-1034-1035-1036-1037-1038-1039-1040-1041-1042-1043-1044-1045-1046-10

1998

1990

1957-1958

1944-1945

1990

10

100

10

1940

6101

100

100

100



A METHOD

How to make use of the Book before in the reading of the Story.

DAVID being seventy years of age, was of wisdom, memory, &c. sufficient to govern his Kingdom, 1 Reg. Chap. 1.

Old age is not ever unfit for publick Government.

DAVID being of great years, and so having a cold, dry, and impotent body, married with Abishag, a fair maid, of the best complexion through the whole Realm, to revive his body, and prolong his life, 1 Reg. Chap. 1. vers. 3.

D. 4.

Ex.

Example of the like practice in
Charles the Fifth.

David being old and impotent of body, by the advice of his Nobles and Physicians, married a young Maid called Abishag, to warm and preserve his old body.

Observation.

WHether David did well in marrying a Maid? and whether it be lawful for an old decayed and impotent man, to marry a young woman; or on the other side, for an old, worn, and decrepit woman, to marry a young and lusty man.

For the Affirmative.

AR G. The end of marriage is Society and mutual comfort; but there may be society and mutual comfort in a marriage betwixt an old, and young party. Ergo, 'tis lawful.

Ans^r. Society and comfort is a cause and effect of marriage; but none of the principal

pal ends of marriage : which are,

1. { Procreation of children, and so the
continnuance of mankind.
2. { The avoiding of Fornication.

As for comfort and society, they may be betwixt man and man, woman and woman, where no marriage is, and therefore no proper ends of marriage.

The Negative.

AR G. 1. That conjunction, which hath no respect to the right and proper ends, for which marriage was ordained by God, is no lawful marriage. But the conjunction betwixt an old impotent and young party, hath no respect to the right end, for which marriage was ordained by God. Therefore is no lawful marriage.

2. No contract, wherein the party contracting, bindeth himself to an impossible condition, or to do that which he cannot do, is good or lawful. But the contract of marriage by an impotent person with a young party, bindeth him to an impossible condition to do that which he cannot do, viz. to perform the duties of marriage; Therefore it is unlawful.

For the same cause, the Civil Law determineth a nullity in these marriages, except the woman know before the infirmity of the man, in which case she can have no wrong, being a thing done with her own knowledge and consent, because *Volenti non fit injuria*: — In legem Julian. de adulteriis leg. Si Uxor, &c.

It provideth further, for the more certainty of the infirmity, That three years be expired before the dissolution of the marriage, because that men that have been infirm at the first, by reason of sickness or some other accident, afterwards proved to be sufficient: *De repudiis leg. in causis.*

Defence for David, in marrying *Abishag.*

1. **I**T was rather a Medicine, than a marriage, without any evil, or disordered affection.

2. It was by the perswasion of his Nobles, and Physicians.

3. It was for the publick good, to prolong the life of a worthy Prince.

4. It was with the knowledge and consent of the young maid, who was made ac-

acquainted with the Kings infirmity, and to that end she was married unto him; who if she did it for the common good, and for duties sake, having withal the gift of continency, she is to be commended; if for ambition, or some vain respect, it is her own, and not Davids fault.

Political Nobility.

Adonijah aspiring to the Kingdom,

First, took the advantage of Davids affection and kindness towards him, and made him secure of any ill dealing.

Secondly, of his age and infirmities, disabling his Father as unfit for Government.

Thirdly, blazed his Title, and Right to the Crown.

Fourthly, got him Chariots, Horse-men, and Foot-men, and a guard to make shew of State.

Fifthly, being a comely, and goodly Person, made a popular shew of himself, and his qualities.

Sixthly,

Sixthly, joyned to himself in Faction Joab, the General of the Army; who was in displeasure for murthering of Abner, and Amaza, and feared that David would supply Benajah in his place; and so was discontented. And Abiathér the High Priest, that was likewise discontented with David, for the preferment of Zadock.

Seventhly, had meetings with them, and other his confederates under pretence of a vow, and offering at the Fountain of Raguel, in the confines of Judea.

Eighthly, made a shew of Religion by Sacrificing, &c.

Ninthly, made himself familiar with the Nobles and people, and entertained them with feasting.

Tenthly, drew into his part the chief Officers of the Court, and Servants to the King, by rewards, Familiarity, &c.

Eleventhly, disgraced and abased the Competitour, and such as he knew would take part with him, and con- craleth his ambition, and purpose from them.

Twelfthly, had Jonathan a Favourite of the Court, and near about the King to give him intelligence, if any thing were discovered, and moved at the Court; whilest

whilest himself was in hand about his practice.

OBSERVATIONS.

Ways of such as aspire to the Kingdom, and marks to discern them.

1. **T**hey wind into the Princes favour by service, officiousness, flattery, &c. to plant in him a good opinion of their loyalty and faithfulness, thereby to make him secure of their practices.
2. They take advantage of the Princes infirmities, age, impotency, negligence, sex, &c. And work upon that by disabling the Prince, and secret detraacting of his State, and Government.
3. They blaze their Title, and claim to the Crown, if they have any with their friends and favourites.
4. They provide them in secret of extraordinary forces, and furniture for the wars, make much of good Souldiers, and have a pretence (if it be espied) of some other end, as for the Kings honour, or service, and to be in readiness against foreign enemies, &c.
5. They

5. They make open shew of their best qualities, and comeliness of their persons (which though it be vain as a dumb shew, it is very effectual to win the liking of the popular sort, which according to the rules of the election of Kings, in the Bees Common-wealth, think that *Forma est digna imperare*) Activity, Nobility, Ancestrie, &c.

6. To have their blazers abroad to see out their virtues, and to prepare their friends in every Province.

7. To draw in to their part, and make sure unto them of the chief Peers, and men of best quality, such as are mightiest and most gracious with the souldiers, and the Military men, and most subtle and politick, especially such as be ambitious and discontent with the State.

8. To have meetings for conference under some pretence of some ordinary matter in some convenient place, not too near, nor too far off, but where friends may best resort and assemble unto them without suspicion.

9. To take up a shew, and pretence of Religion more than before, and beyond the practise of their former life.

10. They use popular courtesie (which in a great person is very effectual) feasting, liberality, gaming, &c.

11. To

11. To be over liberal, and win to them by gifts, familiarity, &c. the chief Officers of the Court, and Governors of State.

12. To have some near about the Prince, to keep them in credit, and common suspicion, if any arise.

13. To disgrace such as they know to be sure and faithful to the Prince, and present State, or to the competitor, and to bring them into contempt by slander, detraction, and all means they can, and to conceal the designs from them, lest they be discovered before they be too ripe.

14. To have some spy near about the Prince, to advertize them if any inkling suspicion arise, whilst themselves are practising.

Note the practises of Absolom, 2 Sam.

16. And of Cyrus minor in Xenophon; Περὶ ἀναβασιῶν. cap. 1.

Political Prince.

David being a most worthy and excellent Prince for wisdom, valour, religion, and justice, and so highly deserving of the Common-wealth, yet grown
into

into age, grew withal into contempt, and had many both of his Nobles, and common people, that fell from him? first with *Absolom*, then with *Adonijah*, who affected the Kingdom, and rebelled against him: For remedy whereof, he stirred up himself to publick actions, which might shew his vigour and sufficiency to manage the affairs of his Kingdom.

1. **A**fter the victory against *Absolom*, he forced himself to forbear mourning, and shewed himself to his discontented Army, when all were like to fall from him, for his unreasonable sorrow and lamentation for his Son.

2. After the victory, he caused a general convention to be assembled of the whole Nation, to bring him home with honour to Jerusalem, which was a renewing, and re-establishing of him, 2 Sam. 19. 12.

3. He gave an experiment of his power and authority, by deposing a person of great authority and estimation, to wit
Joab,

Joab, General Captain of the Army, and advancing Amasa in his place.

4. He sent kind messages to Jerusalem, and to her chief and head towns, and special men of Judea, his contributes, putting them in mind of their alliance with him, with these words, That they were of his own flesh and blood, with protestation of his special love and affection towards them, to provide them with the like kindness and affection towards him.

5. He assembled a Parliament of his whole Realm, and took occasion upon the designing of his successor, to commend unto them the succession of his house, and the continuance and maintenance of Gods true worship and religion then established, and gave a grave and publick charge to his Successour now designed, touching the manner of his Government, and maintaining of Religion, 1 Chron. 12. 13.

6. He shewed his bounty and magnificence in congesting matter for building of the Temple, as gold, silver, brass, &c. And caused it to be published and made known to the Parliament and whole Nation, 1 Chron. 22. 13.

7. He revived the Church-Government, and set it in a right order, assigning to every Church-Officer his place and function.

8. He

8. He suppressed the faction of Adonijah, and ordained Solomon his Successour, 1 Kings 1. 21. By these means he retained his Majesty and Authority in his old age, as appeareth by the effect; for that being bed-ridden, he suppressed the faction of Adonijah, (which was grown mighty, and was set on foot) with his bare commandment, and signification of his pleasure, and so he died in peace.

FINIS.

Sir Walter Raleigh's
**INSTRUCTIONS
TO HIS
SON:
AND TO
POSTERITY.**

Corrected and enlarged according
to the Author's own Copy.

LONDON,

Printed for *Henry Mortlock*, at
the *Phoenix* in *St. Paul's Church-*
yard, and at the *White Hart* in
Westminster-Hall. 1675.



Sir Walter Raleigh

OTOCIRIS

STIRTS N.

CHAP. I.

*Virtuous persons to be made choice
of for friends.*

THere is nothing more becoming any wise man, than to make choice of friends, for by them thou shalt be judged what thou art: let them therefore be wise and virtuous, and none of those that follow thee for gain; but make election rather

ther of thy betters, than thy Inferiours, shunning alwayes such as are poor and needy : for if thou givest twenty gifts, and refuse to do the like but once, all that thou hast done will be lost, and such men will become thy mortal enemies : Take also special care, that thou never trust any friend or servant, with any matter that may endanger thine estate ; for so shalt thou make thy self a bond-slave to him that thou trustest, and leave thy self alwayes to his mercy : And be sure of this, thou shalt never find a friend in thy young years, whose conditions and qualities will please thee after thou comest to more discretion and judgement, and then all thou givest is lost, and all wherein thou shalt trust such a one, will be discovered. Such therefore as are thy inferiours, will follow thee but to eat thee out, and when thou leavest to feed them, they will hate thee ; and such kind of men, if thou preserve thy estate, will alwayes be had : And if thy friends be of better quality than thy self, thou mayest be sure of two things : the first, That they will be more careful to keep thy counsel, because they have more to lose than thou hast : the second, They will esteem thee

thee for thy self, and not for that which thou dost possess; but if thou be subject to any great vanity or ill (from which I hope God will bless thee) then therein trust no man; for every mans folly ought to be his greatest secret. And although I perswade thee to associate thy self with thy betters, or at least with thy Peers, yet remember alwayes that thou venture not thy estate with any of those great ones, that shall attempt unlawful things, for such men labour for themselves, and not for thee; thou shalt be sure to part with them in the danger, but not in the honour; and to venture a sure estate in present, in hope of a better in future, is meer madness: And great men forget such as have done them service, when they have obtained what they would, and will rather hate thee for saying thou hast been a mean of their advancement, than acknowledge it.

I could give thee a thousand examples, and I my self know it, and have tasted it in all the course of my life; when thou shalt read and observe the Stories of all Nations, thou shalt find innumerable examples of the like: Let thy love therefore be to the best,
so

so long as they do well; but take heed that thou love God, thy Countrey, thy Prince, and thine own estate, before all others: for the fancies of men change, and he that loves to day, hateth to morrow; but let reason be thy School-mistress, which shall ever guide thee aright.

CHAP. II.

Great care to be had in the choosing of a Wife.

THe next and greatest care ought to be in the choice of a Wife, and the only danger therein, is beauty, by which all men in all ages, wise and foolish, have been betrayed. And though I know it vain to use reasons or arguments, to dissuade thee from being captivated therewith, there being few or none, that ever resisted that Witchery; yet I cannot omit to warn thee, as of other things, which may be thy ruine and destruction. For the present time, it is true, that every man prefers his fantasie in that appetite, before all other worldly desires, leaving the

the care of honour, credit; and safety in respect thereof; But remember, that though these affections do not last, yet the bond of Marriage dureth to the end of thy life; and therefore better to be born withall in a Mistres, than in a Wife, for when thy humour shall change, thou art yet free to chuse again (if thou give thy self that vain liberty.) Remember secondly, that if thou marry for Beauty, thou bindest thy self all thy life for that, which perchance will neither last nor please thee one year; and when thou hast it, it will be to thee of no price at all, for the degree dieth when it is attained, and the affection perisheth, when it is satisfied. Remember, when thou wert a sucking Child, that then thou didst love thy Nurse, and that thou wert fond of her, after a while thou didst love thy Drie-nurse, and didst forget the other, after that thou didst also despise her; so will it be with thee in thy liking in elder years; and therefore, though thou canst not forbear to love, yet forbear to link, and after awhile thou shalt find an alteration in thy self, and see another far more pleasing than the first, second, or third Love; yet I wish thee above all the rest, have a care thou dost

doſt not marry an antcomely Woman
for any reſpect ; for comelineſs in
Children is riches, if nothing elſe be
left them. And if thou have care for
thy races of horſes, and other beaſts,
value the ſhape and comelineſs of thy
Children, before alliances or riches :
have care therefore of both together,
for if thou have a fair Wiſe and a poor
one, if thine own eſtate be not great,
aſſure thy ſelf that Love abideth not
with want ; for ſhe is thy companion
of plenty and honour : for I never yet
knew a poor Woman exceeding fair,
that was not made diſhoneſt by one or
other in the end. This Bathſheba taught
her Son Solomon ; *Favour is deceitful,
and Beauty is vanity* : ſhe ſaith further,
*That a wiſe woman overſeeth the wayes of
her houſhold, and eateth not the bread of
Idleneſs.*

Have therefore ever more care, that
thou be beloved of thy Wiſe, rather
than thy ſelf beſotted on her, and thou
ſhalt judge of her love by theſe two
observations : firſt, If thou perceive
ſhe have a care of thy eſtate, and exer-
ciſe her ſelf therein ; the other, If ſhe
ſtudy to pleaſe thee, and be ſweet un-
to thee in converſation, without thy
inſtruction, for Love needs no teach-

ing, nor precept. On the other side, be not sowre or stern to thy wife, for cruelty engendreth no other thing than hatred: Let her have equal part of thy Estate whilest thou livest, if thou find her sparing and honest; but what thou givest after thy death, remember that thou givest it to a stranger, and most times to an enemy, for he that shall marry thy wife, will despise thee, thy memory, and thine, and shall possess the quiet of thy labours, the fruit which thou hast planted, enjoy thy love, and spend with joy and ease what thou hast spared, and gotten with care and travel: Yet alway remember that thou leave not thy wife to be a shame unto thee after thou art dead, but that she may live according to thy estate; especially, if thou hast few Children and them provided for. But howsoever it be, or whatsoever thou find, leave thy wife no more than of necessity thou must, but only during her widowhood; for if she love again, let her not enjoy her second love in the same bed wherein she loved thee, nor fly to future pleasures with those feathers which death hath pulled from thy wings; but leave thy estate to thy house and children, in which thou livest up-
on

on earth whilest it lasteth. To conclude, Wives were ordained to continue the generation of men, not to transferr them, and diminish them, either in continuance or ability; and therefore thy house and estate, which liveth in thy Son, and not in thy Wife, is to be preferred. Let thy time of marriage be in thy young and strong years; for believe it, ever the young wife betrayeth the old husband; and she that had thee not in thy flower, will despise thee in thy fall, and thou shalt be unto her but a captivity and sorrow. Thy best time will be towards thirty, for as the younger times are unfit, either to chuse or to govern a wife and family; so if thou stay long, thou shalt hardly see the education of thy Children, which being left to strangers, are in effect lost, and better were it to be unborn, than ill bred; for thereby thy posterity shall either perish, or remain a shame to thy name and family. Furthermore, if it be late ere thou take a wife, thou shalt spend the prime and summer of thy life with Harlots, destroy thy health, impoverish thy estate, and endanger thy life; and be sure of this, that how many Mistresses soever thou hast, so many enemies thou shalt

purchase to thy self; for there never was any such affection, which ended not in hatred or disdain. Remember the saying of Solomon, *There is a way which seemeth right to a man, but the issues thereof are the wages of death*; for howsoever a lewd woman please thee for a time, thou wilt hate her in the end, and she will study to destroy thee. If thou canst not abstain from them in thy vain and unbridled times, yet remember that thou sowest on the sands, & dost mingle the vital blood with corruption, and purchasest diseases, repentance, and hatred only. Bestow therefore thy youth so, that thou maist have comfort to remember it, when it hath forsaken thee, and not sigh and grieve at the account thereof: whilst thou art young thou wilt think it will never have an end; but behold the longest day hath his evening, and that thou shalt enjoy it but once, that it never turns again, use it therefore as the Spring-time, which soon departeth, and wherein thou oughtest to plant, and sow all provisions for a long and happy life.

CHAP. III.

Wiseſt men have been abuſed by flatterers.

TAKE care thou be not made a fool, by flatterers, for even the wiſeſt men are abuſed by theſe. Know therefore, that flatterers are the worſt kind of Traitors; for they will ſtrengthen thy imperfections, encourage thee in all evils, correct thee in nothing, but ſo ſhadow and paint all thy vices, and follies, as thou ſhalt never, by their will, diſcern evil from good, or vice from virtue. And becauſe all men are apt to flatter themſelves, to entertain the additions of other mens praifes is moſt perillous. Do not therefore praife thy ſelf, except thou wilt be counted a vain glorious fool, neither take delight in the praifes of other men except thou deſerve it, and receive it from ſuch as are worthy and honeſt, and will withal warn thee of thy faults; for flatterers have never any virtue, they are ever baſe, creeping, cowardly perſons. A flatterer is ſaid to be a beaſt that biteth ſmiling, it is ſaid by *Iſaiab* in this man-

her: *My people, they that praise thee seduce thee, and disorder the paths of thy feet:* and *David* desired God to cut out the tongue of a flatterer. But it is hard to know them from friends, so are they obsequious and full of protestations; for as a *wolf* resembles a *Dog*, so doth a flatterer a friend. A flatterer is compared to an *Ape*, who because she cannot defend the house like a *Dog*, labour as a *ox*, or bear burdens as a *horse*, doth therefore yet play tricks, and provoke laughter: Thou maist be sure that he that will in private tell thee thy faults, is thy friend, for he adventures thy mislike, and doth hazard thy hatred; for there are few men that can endure it, every man for the most part delighting in self-praise, which is one of the most universal follies which bewitcheth mankind.

CHAP. IV.

Private quarrels to be avoided.

BE careful to avoid publick disputations at Feast, or at Tables, among

mong cholerick or quarrellsome persons; and eschew evermore to be acquainted or familiar with Ruffians, for thou shalt be in as much danger in contending with a brawler in a private quarrel, as in a battel, wherein thou maist get honour to thy self, and safety to thy Prince and Countrey; but if thou be once engaged, carry thy self bravely, that they may fear thee after. To shun therefore private fight; be well advised in thy words and behaviour, for honour and shame is in the talk, and the tongue of a man causeth him to fall.

Jest not openly at those that are simple, but remember how much thou art bound to God, who hath made thee wiser. Defame not any woman publickly, though thou know her to be evil; for those that are faulty cannot endure to be taxed, but will seek to be avenged of thee, and those that are not guilty cannot endure unjust reproach. And as there is nothing more shameful and dishonest, than to do wrong, so truth it self cutteth his throat that carrieth her publickly in every place. Remember the divine saying, *He that keepeth his mouth, keepeth his life.* Do therefore right to all

men where it may profit them, and thou shalt thereby get much love, and forbear to speak evil things of men, though it be true (if thou be not constrained) and thereby thou shalt avoid malice and revenge.

Do not accuse any man of any crime, if it be not to save thy self, thy Prince, or Countrey; for there is nothing more dishonourable (next to Treason it self) than to be an Accuser. Notwithstanding I would not have thee for any respect lose thy reputation, or endure publick disgrace; for better it were not to live, than to live a coward, if the offence proceed not from thy self; if it do, it shall be better to compound it upon good terms, than to hazard thy self; for if thou overcome, thou art under the cruelty of the Law, if thou art overcome, thou art dead or dishonoured. If thou therefore contend, or discourse in argument; let it be with wise and sober men, of whom thou maist learn by reasoning, and not with ignorant persons, for thou shalt thereby instruct those that will not thank thee, and utter, what they have learned from thee, for their own. But if thou know more than other men, utter it when it may do thee honour,

nour, and not in assemblies of ignorant and common persons.

Speaking much also, is a sign of vanity; for he that is lavish in words, is a niggard in deeds; and as Solomon saith, *The mouth of a wise man is in his heart, the heart of a fool is in his mouth, because what he knoweth or thinketh, he uttereth.* And by thy words and discourses, men will judge thee. For as Socrates saith, *Such as thy words are, such will thy affections be esteemed; and such will thy deeds as thy affections, and such thy life as thy deeds.* Therefore be advised what thou dost discourse of, what thou maintainest; whether touching Religion, State, or vanity; for if thou err in the first, thou shalt be accounted profane; if in the second, dangerous; if in the third, indiscreet and foolish: He that cannot refrain from much speaking, is like a City without walls, and less pains in the world a man cannot take, than to hold his tongue; therefore if thou observe this rule in all assemblies, thou shalt seldome err, restrain thy choller, hearken much, and speak little; for the tongue is the instrument of the greatest good, and greatest evil that is done in the world.

According to Solomon, Life and death are in the power of the tongue: and as Euripides truly affirmeth, Every unbridled tongue, in the end shall find it self unfortunate; for in all that ever I observed in the course of worldly things, I ever found that mens fortunes are oftner made by their tongues than by their virtues, and more mens fortunes overthrown thereby also, than by their vices. And to conclude, all quarrels, mischief, hatred, and destruction, ariseth from unadvised speech; and in much speech there are many errors, out of which thy enemies shall ever take the most dangerous advantage. And as thou shalt be happy, if thou thy self observe these things, so shall it be most profitable for thee to avoid their companies that err in that kind, and not to hearken to Tale-bearers, to inquisitive persons, and such as busie themselves with other mens estates, that creep into houses as spies, to learn news which concerns them not; for assure thy self such persons are most base and unworthy, and I never knew any of them prosper, or respected amongst worthy or wise men.

Take

Take heed also that thou be not found a lyar; for a lying spirit is hateful both to God and man. A lyar is commonly a Coward; for he dares not avow truth. A lyar is trusted of no man; he can have no credit, neither in publick nor private; and if there were no more arguments than this, know that our Lord in *S. John* saith, *That it is a vice proper to Satan*, lying being opposite to the nature of God, which consisteth in Truth; and the gain of lying is nothing else, but not to be trusted of any, nor to be believed when we say the truth. It is said in the *Proverbs*, *That God hateth false lips; and he that speaketh lies shall perish.* Thus thou maist see and find in all the Books of God, how odious and contrary to God a lyar is; and for the world, believe it, that it never did any man good (except in the extremity of saving life;) for a lyar is of a base, unworthy, and cowardly spirit.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

*Three Rules to be observed for the
preservation of a mans estate.*

AMongst all other things of the World, take care of thy estate, which thou shalt ever preserve, if thou observe three things; First, that thou know what thou hast, what every thing is worth that thou hast, and to see that thou art not wasted by thy Servants and Officers. The second is, that thou never spend any thing before thou have it; for borrowing is the canker and death of every mans estate. The third is, that thou suffer not thy self to be wounded for other mens faults, and scourged for other mens offences; which is, the surety for another, for thereby millions of men have been beggered and destroyed, paying the reckoning of other mens riot, and the charge of other mens folly and prodigality; if thou smart, smart for thine own sins, and above all things, be not made an Ass to.

to carry the burdens of other men : If any friend desire thee to be his surety, give him a part of what thou hast to spare, if he press thee farther, he is not thy friend at all, for friendship rather chuseth harm to it self, than offereth it : If thou be bound for a stranger, thou art a fool ; if for a merchant, thou puttest thy estate to learn to swim : if for a Church-man, he hath no inheritance : if for a Lawyer, he will find an evasion by a syllable or word, to abuse thee : if for a poor man, thou must pay it thy self : if for a rich man, it need not : therefore from Suretyship, as from a Man-slayer, or Enchanter, bless thy self ; for the best profit and return will be this, that if thou force him for whom thou art bound, to pay it himself, he will become thy enemy ; if thou use to pay it thy self, thou wilt be a beggar ; and believe thy Father in this, and print it in thy thought, that what virtue soever thou hast, be it never so manifold, if thou be poor withal, thou and thy qualities shall be despised : Besides, poverty is oft times sent as a curse of God, it is a shame amongst men, an imprisonment of the mind, a vexation of every worthy spirit ; thou shalt neither

thier help thy self nor others, thou shalt drown thee in all thy virtues, having no means to shew them, thou shalt be a burthen, and an eye-sore to thy friends, every man will fear thy company, thou shalt be driven basely to beg, and depend on others, to flatter unworthy men, to make dishonest shifts: and to conclude, poverty provokes a man to do infamous and detested deeds: Let no vanity therefore, or perswasion draw thee to that worst of worldly miseries.

If thou be rich, it will give thee pleasure in health, comfort in sickness, keep thy mind and body free, save thee from many perils, relieve thee in thy elder years, relieve the poor, and thy honest friends, and give means to thy posterity to live, and defend themselves, and thine own fame. Where it is said in the *Proverbs*, *That he shall be sore vexed that is surety for a stranger, and he that hateth suretyship is sure*; It is further said, *The poor is hated even of his own neighbour, but the rich have many friends.* Lend not to him that is mightier than thy self, for if thou lendest him, count it but lost; be not surety above thy power, for if thou be surety, think to pay it.

CHAP. VI.

*What sort of Servants are fittest
to be entertained.*

L Et thy servants be such as thou maist command, and entertain none about thee but Yeomen, to whom thou givest wages; for those that will serve thee without thy hire, will cost thee trebble as much as they that know thy fare: if thou trust any Servant with thy purse, be sure thou take his account ere thou sleep; for if thou put it off, thou wilt then afterwards, for tediousness, neglect it. I my self have thereby lost more than I am worth. And whatsoever thy servant gaineth thereby, he will never thank thee, but laugh thy simplicity to scorn; and besides, 'tis the way to make thy servants thieves, which else would be honest.

CHAP.

CHAP. VII.

Brave Rags wear soonest out of fashion.

EXceed not in the humour of rags and bravery; for these will soon wear out of fashion; but money in thy Purse will ever be in fashion; and no man is esteemed for gay Garments, but by Fools and Women.

CHAP. VIII.

Riches not to be sought by evil means.

ON the other side, take heed that thou seek not Riches basely, nor attain them by evil means; destroy no man for his wealth, nor take any thing from the Poor; for the cry and complaint thereof will pierce the Heavens. And it is most detestable before God, and most dishonourable before worthy men to wrest any thing from

from the needy and labouring Soul. God will never prosper thee in ought, if thou offend therein: But use thy poor neighbours and Tenants well, pine not them and their children, to add superfluity and needless expences to thy self. He that hath pity on another mans sorrow, shall be free from it himself; and he that delighteth in, and scorneth the misery of another, shall one time or other fall in to it himself. Remember this Precept, *He that hath mercy on the poor lendeth unto the Lord, and the Lord will recompense him what he hath given.* I do not understand those for poor, which are vagabonds and beggars, but those that labour to live, such as are old and cannot travel, such poor Widows and Fatherless Children as are ordered to be relieved, and the poor Tenants that travel to pay their Rents, and are driven to poverty by mischance, and not by riot or careless expences; on such have thou compassion, and God will bless thee for it. Make not the hungry soul sorrowful, deferr not thy gift to the needy, for if he curse thee in the bitterness of his soul, his prayer shall be heard of him that made him.

CHAP. IX.

*What Inconveniencies happen to
such as delight in Wine.*

TAKE especial care that thou delight not in Wine, for there never was any man that came to honour or preferment that loved it; for it transformeth a man into a beast, decayeth health, poisoneth the breath, destroyeth natural heat, brings a mans stomach to an artificial heat, deformeth the face, rotteth the teeth, and to conclude, maketh a man contemptible, soon old, and despised of all wise and worthy men; hated in thy servants, in thy self and companions; for it is a bewitching and infectious vice; And remember my words, that it were better for a man to be subject to any vice, than to it, for all other vanities and sins are recovered, but a Drunkard will never shake off the delight of beastliness; for the longer it possesseth a man, the more he will delight in it, and the elder he groweth, the

the more he shall be subject to it; for it dulleth the spirits, and destroyeth the body, as Ivy doth the old Tree; or as the Worm that engendereth in the kernel of the Nut.

Take heed therefore that such a cureless Canker pass not thy youth, nor such a beastly infection thy old age; for then shall all thy life be but as the life of a beast, and after thy death, thou shalt only leave a shameful infamy to thy posterity, who shall study to forget that such a one was their Father. *Anacharsis* saith, *The first draught serveth for health, the second for pleasure, the third for shame, the fourth for madness; but in youth there is not so much as one draught permitted; for it putteth fire to fire; and wasteth the natural heat and seed of generation. And therefore, except thou desire to hasten thine end, take this for a general rule, That thou never add any artificial heat to thy body by Wine or Spice, until thou find that time hath decayed thy natural heat, and the sooner thou beginnest to help nature, the sooner she will forsake thee, and trust altogether to Art: who have misfortune, saith Solomon,*

lomon, who have sorrow and grief, who have trouble without fighting, stripes without cause, and faintness of eyes? even they that sit at wine, and strain themselves to empty cups. Pliny saith, wine maketh the hand quivering, the eyes watery, the night unquiet, lewd dreams, a stinking breath in the morning, and an utter forgetfulness of all things.

Whosoever loveth Wine, shall not be trusted of any man; for he cannot keep a secret. Wine maketh man not only a beast, but a mad man; and if thou love it, thy own Wife, thy Children, and thy friends will despise thee. In drink men care not what they say, what offence they give, they forget comeliness, commit disorders; and to conclude, offend all virtuous and honest company, and God most of all, to whom we daily pray for health, and a life free from pain: and yet by drunkenness, and gluttony, (which is the drunkenness of feeding) we draw on, saith Hesiod, a swift, hasty, untimely, cruel, and an infamous old age. And S. Augustine describeth Drunkenness in this manner: *Ebrietas est blandus Dæmon, dulce venenum, suave*

suave peccatum; quam, qui habet, seipsum non habet; quam qui facit, peccatum non facit; sed ipse est peccatum.

Drunkenness is a flattering Devil, a sweet poison, a pleasant sin; which whosoever hath, hath not himself, which whosoever doth commit, doth not commit sin, but he himself is wholly sin.

Innocentius saith, Quid turpius ebrioso, cui fœtor in ore, tremor in corpore, qui promit stulta, promit occulta, cui mens alienatur, facies transformatur? nullum secretum ubi regnat ebrietas, & quid non aliud designat malum? Fertundi calices quem non fecere disertum?

What is filthier than a drunken man to whom there is stink in the mouth, trembling in the body; which uttereth foolish things, and revealeth secret things; whose mind is alienate, and face transformed? Whom have not plentiful cups made eloquent and talking?

When **DIOGENES** saw a house to be sold, whereof the owner was given to drink, I thought at the last, quoth

quoth Diogenes, he would spue out a whole house; Scieham inquit, quod domus tandem emoveret.

CHAP. X.

Let God be thy Protector and Director in all thy Actions.

NOW for the World, I know it too well, to perswade thee to dive into the practices thereof, rather stand upon thine own guard against all that tempte thee thereunto, or may practise upon thee in thy conscience, thy reputation, or thy purse; resolve that no man is wise or safe, but he that is honest.

Serve God, let him be the Author of all thy actions, commend all thy endeavours to him that must either wither or prosper them, please him with prayer, lest if he frown, he confound all thy fortunes and labours,

107

labours, like the drops of Rain on the sandy ground: let my experienced advice, and fatherly instructions, sink deep into thy heart. So God direct thee in all his wayes, and fill thy heart with his grace.

ADVICE

430

~~CONFIDENTIAL~~

end of

FINIS

F-I-N-I-S.



The dutiful

ADVICE

OF A

LOVING SON

To his

AGED FATHER.

SIR,

I Humbly beseech you , both in respect of the honour of God, your duty to his Church, and the comfort of your own soul , that you seriously consider in what terms you stand , and weigh your self in a Christian ballance ; taking for your counterpoise the judgements of God : Take heed in time that the Word

TE-

TEKEL written of old against Belshazzar, and interpreted by Daniel, be not verified in you, whose exposition was, *You have been paired in the Scale, and found of too light weight.*

Remember that you are now in the waning, and the date of your pilgrimage well nigh expired, and now that it behoveth you to look towards your Countrey, your force languisheth, your senses impair, your body droops, and on every side, the ruinous Cottage of your faint and feeble flesh, threatneth the fall: And having so many harbingers of death to premonish you of your end, how can you but prepare for so dreadful a stranger? The young man may dye quickly, but the old man cannot live long: the young mans life by casualty may be abridged, but the old mans by no physick can be long adjourned: and therefore if green years should sometimes think of the grave, the thoughts of old age should continually dwell in the same.

The prerogative of Infancy is innocence; of Child-hood, reverence; of Man-hood, maturity; and of old age, wisdom.

F

And

And seeing then, that the chiefest properties of wisdom, are to be mindful of things past, careful for things present, and provident for things to come: Use now the priviledge of natures talent, to the benefit of your own soul, and procure hereafter to be wise in well doing, and watchful in the fire-fight of future harms. To serve the world you are now unable; and though you were able, yet you have little cause to be willing, seeing that it never gave you but an unhappy welcome, a hurtful entertainment, and now doth abandon you with an unfortunate fare-well.

You have long sowed in a field of flint, which could bring nothing forth but a crop of cares, and afflictions of spirit, rewarding your labours with remorse, and affording for your gain, eternal danger.

It is now more than a seasonable time to alter the course of so unthriving a husbandry, and to enter into the field of Gods Church, in which, sowing the seed of repentant sorrow, and watering them with the tears of humble contrition, you may hereafter reap a more beneficial harvest, and gather

ther the fruits of everlasting comfort.

Remember, I pray you, that your spring is spent, your summer over-past, you are now arrived at the fall of the leaf; yea, and winter colours have long since stained your hoary head.

Be not careless (saith Saint Augustine) though our loving Lord bear long with offenders; for the longer he stays, not finding amendment, the sorer he will scourge, when he comes to judgement: And his patience in so long forbearing, is only to lend us respite to repent, and not in any wise to enlarge us leisure to sin.

He that is tossed with variety of storms, and cannot come to his desired Port, maketh not much way, but is much troubled. So, he that hath passed many years, and purchased little profit hath a long being, but a short life: For, life is more to be measured by well doing, than by number of years; Seeing that most men by many dayes do but procure many deaths, and others in short space attain to the life of infinite ages. What is the body without the soul, but a corrupt carcass? And what is the soul without

God, but a Sepulchre of sin?

If God be the Way, the Life, and the Truth, he that goeth without him, strayeth; and he that liveth without him, dyeth; and he that is not taught by him, erreth.

well (saith Saint Augustine) God is our true and chiefest Life, from whom to revolt, is to fall; to whom to return, is to rise; and in whom to stay, is to stand sure.

God is he, from whom to depart, is to dye; to whom to repair, is to revive; and in whom to dwell is life for ever. Be not then of the number of those that begin not to live, till they be ready to dye: and then after a foes desert, come to crave of God a friends entertainment.

Some there be that think to snatch Heaven in a moment, which the best can scarce attain unto in the maintenance of many years; and when they have glutted themselves with worldly delights, would jump from *Dives Diet* to *Lazarus Crown*, from the service of Satan, to the solace of a Saint.

But be you well assured, that God is not so penurious of friends, as to hold himself and his Kingdom saleable,

able for the refuse and reversion of their lives, who have sacrificed the principal thereof to his enemies, and their own brutish lust; then only ceasing to offend, when the ability of offending is taken from them.

True it is, that a Thief may be saved upon the Cross, and mercy found at the last gasp: But well (saith S. Augustine) though it be possible, yet is it scarce credible, that he in death should find favour, whose whole life deserved death; and that the repentance should be more accepted, that more for fear of Hell, and love of himself, than for the love of God, and loathsomness of sin, cryeth for mercy.

Wherefore, good SIR, make no longer delays; but being so near the breaking up of your mortal house, take time before extremity, to pacifie Gods anger.

Though you suffered the bud to be blasted, though you permitted the fruits to be perished, and the leaves to dry up; yea, though you let the boughs to wither, and the body of your Tree to grow to decay, yet (alas) keep life in the root, for fear lest the whole tree become fewel for Hell fire;

For surely where the tree falleth, there it shall lie, whether towards the South, or to the North, to Heaven or to Hell; and such sap as it bringeth forth, such fruit shall it ever bear.

Death hath already filed from you the better part of your natural forces, and left you now to be Lees, and remissals of your wearyish and dying dayes.

The remainder whereof, as it cannot be long, so doth it warn you speedily to ransom your former losses; for what is age, but the Calends of death? and what importeth your present weakness, but an earnest of your approaching dissolution? You are now embarked in your final voyage, and not far from the stint and period of your course.

Be not therefore unprovided of such appurtenances as are behooveful in so perplexed and perilous a Journey; death it self is very fearful, but much more terrible in respect of the judgement it summoneth us unto.

If you were now laid upon your departing bed, burchened with the heavy load of your former trespasses, and gored with the sting and price of a sinner

stercor'd conscience; if you felt the cramp of death wresting your heart-strings, and ready to make the rueful divorce between body and soul: If you lay panting for breath, and swimming in a cold and pale sweat, wearied with struggling against your deadly pangs, O what would you give for an hours repentance; at what a rate would you value a dayes contrition? Then worlds would be worthless in respect of a little respite; a short truce would seem more precious than the treasures of an Empire; nothing would be so much esteemed as a short time of truce, which now by dayes, and moneths, and years, is most lavishly mis-spent.

Oh how deeply would it wound your woful heart, when looking back into your former life, you considered many hainous and horrible offences committed, many pious works and godly deeds omitted, and neither of both repented, your service to God promised, and not performed.

Oh how unconsolable were your case, your friends being fled, your senses affrighted, your thoughts amazed, your memory decayed, & your whole mind agast, and no part able to per-

form what it should ; but only your guilty conscience pestered with sin, that would continually upbraid you with many bitter accusations.

Oh what would you think then, being stripped out of this mortal weed, and turned both out of service and house-room of this wicked world, you are forced to enter into uncouth and strange paths, and with unknown and ugly company, to be convented before a most severe Judge ; carrying in your conscience your Inditement, written in a perfect Register of all your mis-deeds, when you shall see him prepared to give sentence upon you, against whom you have so often transgressed, and the same to be your Umpire, whom by so many offences you have made your enemy, when not only the Devil, but even the Angels would plead against you, and your own self, in despite of your self, be your own most sharp preacher.

Oh what would you do in these dreadful exigents, when you saw the ghastly Dragon, and huge gulph of Hell, breaking out with most fearful flames, when you heard the weeping, wailing, and gnashing of teeth ; the
rage

rage of those hellish monsters, the horror of the place, the terror of the company, and the eternity of all those torments?

Would you then think them wise, that should delay in so weighty matters, and idly play away the time allotted, to prevent these intolerable calamities? Would you then count it secure, to nurse in your own bosom so many Serpents as sins? and to foster in your soul so many malicious accusers, as mortal and horrible offences? Would you not think one life too little to repent in for so many, and so great iniquities, every one whereof were enough to throw you into those unspeakable and intolerable torments?

And why then (alas) do you not at the least devote that small remnant, and surplussage of these your latter dayes, procuring to make an attonement with God; and to free your Soul and Conscience from that corruption, which by your fall hath crept in to it?

Those very eyes that behold, and read this discourse, those very ears that are attentive to hear it, and that very understanding that considereth

and conceiveth it ; shall be cited as certain witnesses of these rehearsed things. In your own body shall you experience these deadly Agonies, and in your Soul shall you feelingly find these terrible fears ; yea, and your present estate is in danger of the deepest harms, if you do not the sooner recover your self into that fold and family of Gods faithful servants.

What have you gotten by being so long a customer to the World, but false ware, suitable to the shop of such a merchant, whose traffick is toyl, whose wealth is trash, and whose gain is misery ? What interest have you reaped, that might equal your detriment in grace and virtue ? Or what could you find in the vale of tears, that was answerable to the favour of God, with loss whereof you were contented to buy it ?

You cannot now be inveigled with the passions of youth, which making a partiality of things, sets no distance between counterfeit and currant ; for these are now worn out of force, by tract of time are fallen into reproof, by tryal of their folly.

Oh let not the crazie cowardness of
flesh

flesh and blood, daunt the prowess of an intelligent person, who by his wisdom cannot but discern how much more cause there is, and how much more needful it is to serve God, than this wicked world.

But if it be the ungrounded presumption of the mercy of God, and the hope of his assistance at the last plunge (which indeed is the ordinary lure of the Devil to reclaim sinners from the pursuit of Repentance) Alas, that is too palpable a collusion to mislead a sound and serviceable man, howsoever it may prevail with sick and ill-affected judgements. Who would rely upon eternal affairs, upon the gliding slipperiness, and running streams of our uncertain life? Who, but one of distempered wits, would offer fraud to the Decipherer of all thoughts; with whom, dissemble we may to our cost, but to deceive him, is impossible?

Shall we esteem it cunning to rob the time from him, and bestow it on his enemies, who keepeth tale of the least minutes, and will examine in the end how every moment hath been employed? It is a preposterous kind of policy, in any wise conceit to fight
against.

against God, till our weapons be blunted, our forces consumed, our limbs impotent, and our best time spent; and then when we fall for faintness, and have fought our selves almost dead, to presume on his mercy.

Oh! no, no, the wounds of his most sacred body, so often rubbed, and renewed by our sins, and every part and parcel of our bodies so divers, and sundry wayes abused, will be then as so many whet-stones and incentives, to edge and exasperate his most just revenge against us.

It is a strange piece of Art, and a very exorbitant course, when the Ship is sound, the Pilot well, the Marriners strong, the Gale favourable, and the Sea calm; to lye idly at the road, during so seasonable weather: And when the Ship leaketh, the Pilot sick, the Marriners faint, the Storms boisterous, and the Seas a turmoil of outrageous Surges, then to launch forth, (hoise up sail) and set out for a long voyage into a far Countrey.

Yet such is the skill of these evening Repenters, who though in the soundness of their health, and perfect use of their reason, they cannot resolve to

cut

cut the Cables, and weigh the Anchour that with-holds them from God :

Nevertheless they feed themselves with a strong perswasion, that when they are astonied, their wits distracted, the understanding dusked, and the bodies and souls racked, and tormented with the throbs and gripes of a mortal sickness; then forsooth they will begin to think of their weightiest matters, and become sudden Saints, when they are scarce able to behave themselves like reasonable creatures.

No, no, if neither the Canon, Civil; nor the Common Law will allow that man (perished in judgement) should make any Testament of his temporal substance; how can he that is animated with inward garboils of an unsettled conscience, distrained with the wringing fits of his dying flesh, maimed in all his ability, and circled in on every side with many and strange incumbrances, be thought of due discretion to dispose of his chiefest Jewel, which is his Soul? and to dispatch the whole manage of all eternity, and of the treasures of Heaven, in so short a spurt?

No, no, they that will loyter in seed-time, ~~will~~ begin to sow when others reap;

reap; that they will riot out their health, and begin to cast their accounts when they are scarce able to speak; they that will slumber out the day, and enter upon their journey when the light doth fail them; let them blame their own folly, if they dye in debt, and be eternal beggars, and fall head-long into the lap of endless perdition.

Let such listen to S. Cyrian's lesson; Let, saith he, the grievousness of our sore be the measure of our sorrow; let a deep wound have a deep and diligent cure; Let no mans Contrition be less than his Crime.

F I N I S



Sir *Walter Raleigh's*
SCEPTICK.

The SCEPTICK doth neither affirm, neither deny any Position: but doubteth of it; and opposeth his Reasons against that which is affirmed, or denyed, to justify his not consenting.

His first Reason ariseth, from the consideration of the great difference amongst living Creatures, both in the matter and manner of their Generations, and the several Constitutions of their bodies.

Some living Creatures are by copulation, and some without it: and that either by Fire, as Crickets in fornaces; or corrupt water, as Gnats; or slime, as Frogs; or dirt, as Worms; or herbs, as Canker worms; some of ashes, as Beetles; some

some of trees, as the Worms *Psenas* bred in the wild Fig-tree; some of living creatures putrified, as Bees of Bulls, and Wasps of Horses. By Copulation many creatures are brought forth alive, as Man; some in the Egg, as Birds; some in an unshapen piece of flesh, as Bears. These great differences cannot but cause a divers and contrary temperament, and quality in those Creatures, and consequently, a great diversity in their fantasie and conceit; so that they apprehend one and the same object, yet they must do it after a divers manner: for it is not absurd to affirm, That creatures differ so much in temperature, and yet agree in conceit concerning one and the same object.

See But this will more plainly appear, if the instruments of Sense in the body be observed: for we shall find, that as these instruments are affected and disposed, so doth the Imagination conceive that which by them is connected unto it. That very object which seemeth unto us White, unto them which have the Jaundise seemeth Pale, and Red unto those whose Eyes are blood-shot. Forasmuch then as living
crea-

creatures have some white, some pale, some red eyes, why should not one and the same object seem to some white, to some red, to some pale? If a man rub his eye, the figure of that which he beholdeth seemeth long or narrow; is it then not likely, that those creatures which have a long and slanting Pupil of the eye, as Goats, Foxes, Cats, &c. do convey the fashion of that which they behold under another form to the imagination, than those that have round Pupils do?

Who knoweth not, that a Glass presenteth the outward object smother, or greater, according to the making of the glass? If it be hollow, the object seemeth smaller than it is; if the glass be crooked, then the object seemeth long and narrow. And glasses there be, which present the head of him that looketh in them, downwards, and the heels upwards. Now then, seeing the eye, which is the instrument of Sight, in some living creatures is more outward, in some more hollow, in some plain, in some greater, in some less; it is very probable, that Fishes, Men, Lions, and Dogs, whose eyes so much differ, do not conceive the self-same object after the same

same manner, but diversly, according to the diversity of the eye, which offereth it unto the phantasie.

Touch. The same reason holdeth in *ing*. Touching; for seemeth it not absurd to think, that those creatures which are covered with Shells, those which are covered with Scales, and which are covered with Hairs, and those which are Smooth, should all be alike sensible in Touching? and every one of them convey the image, or quality of the same object which they touch, in the very same degree of heat or cold, of driness or moisture, roughness or smoothness, unto the imagination?

Hear. So might it be shewed in *Hear- ing*. ing; for how can we think that the Ear which hath a narrow passage, & the Ear which hath an open & wide passage, do receive the same sound in the same degree? or that the Ear whose inside is full of hair, doth hear in the same just measure, that the Ear doth whose inside is smooth? Since experience sheweth, that if we stop, or half stop our Ears, the sound cometh not to us in the same manner and degree that it doth if our Ears be open.

The

Smell. The like may be thought of
ling. Smelling; for man himself a-
bounding with Flegma, is otherwise
affected in smelling, than he is, if the
parts about the head be full of blood;
and many things afford a delightful
smell to some living creatures, which
smell to other living creatures seemeth
not to be so.

Tast. In the Taste the same reason ap-
ing. pearcth; for to a rough and dry
tongue, that very thing seemeth bitter
(as in an Ague.) which to the moister
tongue seemeth not to be so. Divers
creatures then having tongues drier, or
moister, according to their several tem-
peratures, when they taste the same
thing, must needs conceit it to be ac-
cording as the instrument of their taste
is affected, either bitter, or sweet, &c.
For even as the hand in the striking of
the Harp, though the stroke be one, yet
causeth a sound, sometimes high, some-
times base, according to the quality of
the string that is stricken: Even so one
and the same outward object is diversly
judged of, and conceited, according to
the several and divers qualities of the
instrument of sense, which conveyeth it
to the imagination. Oyntment is plea-
sing

ing to Man; but Beetles and Bees cannot abide it. Oyl to man is profitable; but it killeth Bees and Wasps. Cicuta feedeth Quails, and Henbane Sows; but both of these hurt Man. If a Man eat Ants he is sick; but the Bear being sick, recovereth by eating them.

If then one and the very same thing to the red eye seem red, to another pale, and white to another: If one and the same thing, seem not hot or cold, dry or moist, in the same degree to the several creatures which touch it: If one and the self-same sound seem more shrill to that creature which hath a narrow ear, and more base to him that hath an open ear: If the same thing, at the same time, seem to afford a pleasant and displeasing Smell to divers and several creatures: If that seem bitter in taste to one, which to another seemeth sweet, that to one hurtful, which to another seemeth healthful: I may report how these things appear divers to several creatures, & seem to produce divers effects.

But what they are in their own nature, whether red or white, bitter or sweet, healthful or hurtful, I cannot tell. For why should I presume to prefer

fer my conceit and imagination, in affirming that a thing is thus, or thus, in its own nature, because it seemeth to me to be so, before the conceit of other living creatures, who may as well think it to be otherwise in each one nature, because it appeareth otherwise to them than it doth to me?

They are living creatures as well as I: why then should I condemn their conceit and fantasie, concerning any thing, more than they may mine? They may be in the truth and I in error, as well as I in truth, and they err. If my conceit must be believed before theirs, great reason that it be proved to be truer than theirs. And this proof must be either by demonstration, or without it. Without it none will believe. Certainly, if by demonstration, then this demonstration must seem to be true, or not seem to be true. If it seem to be true, then will it be a question, whether it be so indeed as it seemeth to be; and to alledge that for a certain proof, which is uncertain and questionable, seemeth absurd.

If it be said, that the imagination of Man judgeth truer of the outward object, than the imagination of other
li-

living creatures doth, and therefore to be credited above others, (besides that which is already said) this is easily refuted by comparing of Man with other creatures.

It is confessed, the Dog excelleth Man in smell, and in hearing: and whereas there is said to be a two-fold discourse, one of the mind, another of the tongue, and that of the mind is said to be exercised in chusing that which is convenient, and refusing that which is hurtful in knowledge, justice, and thankfulness: This creature chuseth his food, refuseth the whip, fawneth on his Master, defendeth his house, revengeth himself of those strangers that hurt him. And *Homer* mentioneth *Argus* the Dog of *Ulysses*, who knew his Master, having been from home so many years, that at his return all the people of his house had forgot him. This creature, saith *Chrysippus*, is not void of Logick: for when in following any beast, he cometh to three several ways, he smelleth to the one, and then to the second, and if he find that the beast which he pursueth be not fled one of these two wayes, he presently without smelling any further to it, taketh the third way: which,

which, saith the same Philosopher, is as if he reasoned thus, the Beast must be gone either this, or this, or the other way; but neither this nor this; *Ergo*, the third: and so away he runneth.

If we consider his skill in Physick, it is sufficient to help himself: if he be wounded with a dart, he useth the help of his Teeth to take it out, of his Tongue to cleanse the wound from corruption: he seemeth to be well acquainted with the Precept of *Hippocrates*, who saith, that the Rest of the Foot is the Physick of the Foot, and therefore if his foot be hurt, he holdeth it up that it may rest: if he be sick, he giveth himself a Vomit by eating of Grass, and recovereth himself. The Dog then we see is plentifully furnished with inward discourse.

Now outward speech is not needful to make a creature reasonable, else a dumb Man were an unreasonable creature.

And do not Philosophers themselves reject this as an enemy to knowledge, and therefore they are *silent* when they are instructed; and yet even as Barbarous and strange people of speech, but we understand it not, neither do we per-

perceive any great difference in their words: but a difference there seemeth to be, and they do express their thoughts and meanings one to another by those words. Even so those creatures, which are commonly called unreasonable, do seem to parly one with another; and by their speech do understand one the other. Do not Birds by one kind of speech call their young ones, and by another cause them to hide themselves? Do they not by their several voices express their several passions of joy, of grief, of fear in such manner, that their fellows understand them? Do they not by their voice foreshew things to come? But we will return to that creature we first did instance in. The Dog delivereth one kind of voice when he hunteth, another when he howleth, another when he is beaten, and another when he is angry. These creatures then are not void of outward speech.

If then these creatures excel Man in sense, and are equal to him in inward and outward discourse, why should not their conceits and imaginations convey the outward object in as true a manner as ours? and if so, then seeing
their

their imaginations are divers, and they conceit it diversly according to their divers temperaments, I may tell what the outward object seemeth to me; but what it seemeth to other creatures, or whether it be indeed that which it seemeth to me, or any other of them, I know not.

But be it granted, that the Judgement of Man in this case, is to be preferred before the Judgement of Beasts; yet in Men there is great difference, both in respect of the outward shape, and also of the temperature of their bodies: For the body of the *Scythian* differeth in shape from the body of the *Indian*: the reason of it, ariseth (say the Dogmaticks) from a predominancy of humours in the one more than in the other; and as severall humours are predominant, so are the phantasies and conceits severally framed and effected. So that our Countrey-men delight in one thing, the *Indian* not in that, but in another which we regard not. This would not be, if their conceits and ours were both alike; for then we should like that which they do, & they would dislike that which we would dislike. It is evident also, that men differ very much

in the temperature of their bodies, else why should some more easily digest Beef than shel-fish? and other be mad for the time, if they drink Wine? There was an old woman about *Arbeus*, which drunk three drams of *Cicuta* (every dram weighing sixty Barley corns, and eight drams to an ounce) without hurt. *Lyfis*, without hurt, took four drams of Poppy; and *Demophon*, which was Gentleman Sewer to *Alexander*, was very cold when he stood in the Sun, or in a hot bath, but very hot when he stood in the shadow. *Athenagoras* felt no pain if a Scorpion stung him. And the *Pisilli* (a people in *Lybia*, whose bodies are venom to Serpents) if they be stung by Serpents, or Asps, receive no hurt at all.

The *Ethiopians*, which inhabit the river *Hydaspis*, do eat Serpents and Scorpions without danger. *Lotharius* a Chyrurgeon, at the smell of a Sturgeon, would be for the time mad. *Andron* of *Argos*, was so little thirsty, that without want of drink, he travelled through the hot and dry Countrey of *Lybia*. *Tiberius Caesar* would see very well in the dark. *Aristotle* mentioneth of *Thracius*, who said, that the image of

of a Man went alwayes before him.

If then it be so, that there be such differences in Men, this must be by reason of the divers temperatures they have, and divers dispositions of their conceit and imagination; for if one hate, and another love the very same thing, it must be that their fantasies differ, else all would love it, or all would hate it. These Men then, may tell how these things seem to them good, or bad; but what they are in their own Nature they cannot tell.

If we will hearken to mens opinions, concerning one and the same matter, thinking thereby to come to the knowledge of it, we shall find this to be impossible; for, either we must believe what all men say of it, or what some men only say of it. To believe what all men say of one & the same thing, is not possible; for then we shall believe Contrarieties; for some men say, that that very thing is pleasant, which other say is displeasing. If it be said, we must believe only some men, then let it be shewed who those some men are; for the *Platonists* will believe *Plato*, but the *Epicures* *Epicurus*, the *Pythagoreans* *Pythagoras*, and other Philosophers the
G 2 masters

masters of their own Sects : so that it is doubtful, to which of all these we shall give credit. If it be said, that we must credit the greatest number ; this seemeth childish : for there may be amongst other Nations a greater number which deny that very point, which the greatest number with us do affirm : so that hereof nothing can certainly be affirmed.

This argument seemeth to be further confirmed, if the differences of the Senses of *Hearing*, *Seeing*, *Smelling*, *Touching*, and *Tasting* be considered ; for that the Senses differ, it seemeth plain.

Painted Tables (in which the art of Slanting is used) appear to the Eye, as if the parts of them were some higher, and some lower than the other, but to the Touch they seem not to be so.

Honey seemeth to the Tongue sweet, but unpleasant to the Eye : so Oyntment doth recreate the Smell, but it offendeth the Taste. Rain-water is profitable to the Eyes, but it hurteth the Lungs. We may tell then, how these things seem to our several senses, but what they are in their own nature we cannot tell : for why should not a man
cre-

credit any one of his senses as well as the other ?

Every object seemeth to be presented diversly unto the several instruments of Sense. An Apple to the Touch seemeth smooth, sweet to the Smell, and to the Eye yellow ; but whether the Apple have one of these qualities only, or more than these qualities, who can tell ? The Organ hath many Pipes, all which are filled with the same blast of wind, varied according to the capacity of the several Pipes which receive it : even so the quality of the Apple may be but one, and this one quality may be varied, and seem yellow to the Eye, to the Touch smooth, and sweet to the Smell, by reason of the divers instruments of the Sense, which apprehend this one quality diversly.

It may be also, that an Apple hath many qualities besides ; but we are not able to conceive them all, because we want fit means and instruments to apprehend them. For suppose that some Man is born blind, and deaf, and yet can touch, smell and taste ; this man will not think that there is any thing, which may be seen or heard, because he wanteth the Senses of hearing and

seeing; he will only think there are those qualities in the object, which by reason of his three Senses he conceiveth: Even so the Apple may have many more qualities; but we cannot come to know them, because we want fit instruments for that purpose.

If it be replyed, that Nature hath ordained as many instruments of Sense, as there are sensible objects; I demand, What Nature? for there is a confused controversie about the very Essence of Nature. Some affirming it to be one thing, others another, few agreeing: so that what the quality of an Apple is, or whether it hath one quality or many, I know not.

Let a man also consider, how many things that are separated, and by themselves, appear to differ from that which they seem to be, when they are in a mass or lump; the scrapings of the goats horn seems white, but in the horn they seem black. The stone *Tenarius*, being polished, seemeth white, but unpolished and rough, it seemeth yellow. Sands being separated, appear rough to the Touch, but a great heap, soft. I may then report, how these things appear, but whether they are so indeed, I know not.

Sir



Sir Walter Raleigh's

OBSERVATIONS

Concerning the Causes of the
Magnificency and Opulency
of Cities.

THat the only way to civilize and reform the savage and barbarous Lives and corrupt Manners of such people, is,

1. To be dealt withal by gentle and loving Conversation among them ; to attain to the knowledge of their Language, and of the multitude of their special discommodities and inconveniencies in their manner of living.

2. The next is to get an admired reputation amongst them, upon a solid and true foundation of Piety, Justice, and Wisdom, conjoynd with fortitude and power.

G 4

3. The

3. The third is, discreetly to possess them with a knowledge of the condition of their own estate. Thus *Orpheus* and *Amphion*, were said to draw after them the beasts of the field, &c.

And this must be first wrought by a visible representation, of the certainty, truth, and sincerity of these, together with the felicity of a reformed estate.

All which is but to give foundation, bottom, and firm footing unto action, and to prepare them to receive wholesome and good advice, for the future profit and felicity of themselves and their posterity.

For the more commodious effecting of this Reformation in a rude and barbarous people, they are to be perswaded to withdraw and unite themselves into several Colonies; that by it an interchangeable communication and commerce of all things may more commodiously be had, and that they may so live together in civility, for the better succour and welfare of one another: And thereby they may more easily be instructed in the Christian Faith, and governed under the Magistrates and Ministers of the King, or
other

other superior power, under whom this Reformation is sought. Which course the Stoick tells, that *Theseus* took, after he had taken upon him the Government of the *Athenians*, whereby he united all the people into one City, that before lived dispersedly in many Villages. The like is put in practice at this day by the *Portugals* and *Jesuits*, that they may with less difficulty and hinderance reform the rough behaviour, and savage life of the people of *Brazile*, who dwell scattered and dispersed in Caves and Cottages made of boughs and leaves of the Palm-trees.

Alexander the Great built more than seventy Cities : *Seleucus* built three Cities, called *Apamea*, to the honour of his wife; and five called *Iadicea*, in memory of his Mother; and five called *Selencia*, to the honour of himself.

*Safety for Defence of the People
and their Goods, in and near
the Town.*

Situati- **I**N the Situation of Cities,
on for there is to be required a
safety place of Safety, by some natu-
and ral strength, commodiousness
plenty. for Navigation, and Conduct,
for the attaining of plenty of all good
things, for the sustenance and comfort
of mans life, and to draw Trade and
Entercourse of other Nations; as
if the same be situate in such sort,
as many people have need to re-
pair thither for some natural com-
modity or other of the Countrey,
which by traffick and transportation
of commodities, whereof they have
more plenty than will supply their
own necessity, or for receiving of
things whereof they have scarcity.
And much better will it be, if the place
afford some notable commodity of it
self, from whence other Nations may
more readily, and at better-rate at-
tain the same: likewise, and withal,
be

be so fertil, pleasant and healthful of it self, that it may afford plenty of good things, for the delight and comfort of the inhabitants.

Multi- In former times, great Nations, *tude of* Kings and Potentates have endured sharp conflicts, and held *Inhabi-* it high Policy, by all means to increase their Cities, with multitudes of inhabitants. And to this end the *Romans* ever furnished themselves with strength and power, to make their neighbour people, of necessity, willing to draw themselves to *Rome* to dwell, and overthrow their Towns and Villages of mean strength, down to the ground.

So did they for this cause utterly destroy many Cities, bringing alwayes the vanquished Captives to *Rome*, for the augmentation of that City.

Romulus, after a mighty fight with the *Sabines*, condescended to Peace, upon condition that *Tatius* their King should come with all their people to dwell at *Rome*: *Tatius* did accept, and made choice of the *Capitol*, and the Mount *Quirinalis* for his seat and Palace.

The same course held *Tamburlane* the

the Great, whereby he enlarged the great *Samarcanda*, still bringing unto it, the richest and wealthiest Citizens he had subdued.

And the *Ottomans*, to make the City *Constantinople* rich and great, brought to it many thousand Families, especially Artificers out of the subdued Cities, as *Mahomet* the Great from *Trebizond*, *Selim* the First from *Cairo*, and *Solyman* from *Tauris*.

Authority and necessity, without the consideration of the conveniencies and commodiousness of Situation above mentioned, are of small moment in the foundation of a City; thereby only it would be unlikely, either to grow or continue in Magnificency or Opulency; for if Profit, Height, and Delight go not companions therewith, no Authority or necessity can retain much People or Wealth.

But if the place whereupon a City is to be founded, be commodious for the aforesaid conveniencies, which help greatly for the felicity of this life; then, no doubt, the same is likely to draw much abundance of people and riches unto the same, whereby it may, by the help of Arts and Industry, in
time,

time, become magnificent and glorious.

Unto the good estate, greatness, and glory of a City, those things hereafter mentioned do greatly avail, and are of much importance, *viz.*

Reli- Religion, which is of such force
gion and might, to amplify Cities and Dominions, and of such attractive virtue to replenish the same with people and wealth, and to hold them in due obedience, as none can be more; for without adoration of some Deity, no Common-wealth can subsist.

Witness *Jerusalem, Rome, Constantino-*ple, and all other Cities that have been famous for the profession of Religion, or Divine Worship. And no marvel, for there is not any thing in this world of more efficacy and force to allure and draw to it the hearts of Men, than God, which is the *summum bonum*. He is carefully desired, and continually sought for of all creatures; for all regard Him as their last end and refuge.

Light things apply themselves upwards, heavy things downwards; the Heavens to Revolution, the Herbs to flowers, Trees to bear fruit, Beasts to present their kind, and Man in seeking his tranquillity and everlasting glory.

But forasmuch as God is of so high a nature as the sense and understanding of Man cannot conceive it, every man directly turns himself to that place where he leaves some print of his power, or declares some sign of his assistance. And to such persons to whom he seemeth more especially to have revealed himself.

Academies, and Schools of Learning with convenient immunities and priviledges for Scholars, and means for Recreation for Delight, are of great importance to enlarge and enrich a City: forasmuch as men long for honour and profit, and of Arts and liberal sciences some bring certain wealth to men, and some promotions and preferments to honourable functions: for by this means, not only young men, and those that are desirous of Learning and Virtue in the same Common-wealth, will be retained in their own Countrey; but also strangers will be drawn home to them. And the more will this be available if occasion be given to Scholars and students, to rise to degrees of Honour and preferment by their learned exercises, and that by the Policy of the same City, good Wits.

Wits be accounted of, and rewarded well : that the same Academies and Schools be stored with plenty of Doctors and learned men, of great fame and reputation.

Courts Courts of Justice, with due execution of the same in a City, do much enable, enlarge, and enrich it ; for it fasteneth a great liking in a City to virtuous men, and such as be wealthy, that therein they may be free, and in safety from the violence of the oppressions of covetous and wicked men : and there will be rather resort thither to inhabit, or traffick there as occasions may minister unto them. And many others that have cause of suit will repair thither, whereas they may be sure to find Judgement and Justice duly executed, whereby the City must needs be enlarged and enriched : for our lives, and all that ever we have are in the hands of Justice : so that if Justice be not administred amongst men, in vain is there any society and commerce, or any other thing can be profitable or safe ; so much is love and charity failed, and iniquity increased upon the face of the earth.

The

Arti- The excellency and multitude
ficers. likewise of Artificers exercising
th:ir manual Arts and Trades, do mar-
vellously encrease and enrich a State,
whereof some are necessary, some com-
modious for a civil life, other some are
of pomp and ornament, and other
some of delicacy and curiosity, where-
of doth follow concourse of people
that labour and work, and currant mo-
ney which doth enrich and supply Ma-
terials for Labourers, and work-men,
buying and selling, transportation from
place to place, which doth employ
and encrease the artificiois and cun-
ning parts of the wit of Man; and
this art and exquisiteness of work-
man-ship and skill is so powerful
herein, that it far excells the simple
commodities and materials that Na-
ture produceth; and is alone suffici-
ent of it self to make a City or State,
both magnificent and glorious: and
the daily experience we have in these
our dayes, and in former times, doth
manifestly approve the same, and
make evident without all contradi-
ction.

Some natural benefits that a City
also may have for the excellency of Art,
or

or workman-ship of some special commodities above any other place, either through the quality of the Water, or other matter whatsoever, or some hidden mysterie of the inhabitants in working thereof, may be a great help for the enlargement and enriching of a City.

The command of a Countrey that affordeth some proper commodity, is of it self sufficient mightily to bring a City to great wealth, and to advance it to great power, and draweth thereby dependency and concourse, much advantageous also, as well for the publick weal as the private person.

A City also may be Lord of much Merchandise and traffick, by means of the commodious situation to many Nations, to whom it serveth and hath relation to, as Ware-houses, Roomth and Store-houses, by reason whereof, the Nations adjoyning do use to resort thereunto to make their provisions of such things. And this consisteth in the largeness of the Ports, the fitness of the gulphs and creeks of the Seas, in the Navigable rivers and channels, and the plain and safe wayes that leadeth to the City,
or

or that come, or turn by or near it, *Privi-* Priviledge and freedom from
ledge. Customes and exactions; doth
greatly encrease the Trade, and draw
inhabitants to a City, whereby the same
may become both rich and powerful;
whereof the Marts and Fairs, and Mar-
kets bear good witness, which are fre-
quented with great concourse of
people, Tradesmen and Merchants, for
no other respect; but that they are
there free and frank from Customes
and exactions. And the Cities in
Flanders are lively testimonies here-
of, where the Customes are very
small.

By reason whereof, all such as have
erected new Cities in times past to
draw concourse of people unto it, have
granted large immunities, and privi-
ledges at the least, to the first inhabi-
tants thereof.

The like have they done that have
restored Cities emptied with Plague,
consumed with Wars, or afflicted with
Famine, or some other scourge of God.
In respect whereof, Freedom of Ci-
ties, hath been often granted to such
as would with their families, in-
habit there, or would bring Corn
and

and other necessities for provision of victual.

The Romans, to increase their Cities, made the Towns that well deserved of them (which they after called *Municipia*) to be partakers of their franchises and priviledges.

The first devices The first means the *Romanesque* of Rome to allure people to make their habitations rather in Rome than elsewhere, was the opening the Sanctuary, and giving liberty and freedom to all that would come unto them. In respect whereof, there flocked thither, with their goods, numbers of people what were either racked with exactions, thrust out of their habitations, or unsafe, or unsure for their lives in their own Countries for Religion sake.

The very same reason in a manner hath increased so much the City of Geneva: forasmuch as it hath offered entertainment to all comers out of France & Italy, that have either forsaken, or been exiled their Countries for Religion sake. Likewise, triumphs, goodly buildings, battels on the water, fights of sword-players, hunting of wild beasts,

beasts, publick shows and fights, plays solemnized with great pomp and preparation, and many other such things to draw the curious people to a City inspeakably, which leaves behind them much treasure, and for such cause will rather settle themselves to inhabit there, than in other places. This was also the device of Rome in her infancy to enlarge her self.

*The Causes that concern the
Magnificency of a
City.*

TO confirme a City in her greatness, *Justice, Peace* and *Plenty* are the undoubted means : for *Justice* assureth every man his own : *Peace* causeth all Arts and negotiation whatsoever to flourish : and *Plenty* of food and victual, that sustaineth the life of Man with ease and much contentment. To conclude, all those things that cause the Greatness of a City, are also fit to conserve the same.

Sir



Sir *Walter Raleigh's*
 Seat of
GOVERNMENT.

*That the Seat of Government is upheld
 by the two great pillars thereof, viz.
 Civil Justice, and Martial Policy,
 which are framed out of Husbandry,
 Merchandise, and Gentry of this
 Kingdom.*

THey say, that the goodli-
 est CEDARS which
 grow on the high moun-
 tains of *Libanus*, thrust
 their roots between the
 cliffs of hard Rocks, the better to bear
 themselves against the strong storms
 that blow there. As Nature hath in-
 structed those Kings of Trees, so hath
 Reason taught the Kings of Men, to
 root themselves in the hardy Hearts of
 their faithful Subjects. And as those
 Kings

kings of Trees have large Tops, so have the Kings of Men large Crowns; whereof as the first would soon be broken from their bodies, were they not underborn by many branches; so would the other easily totter, were they not fastened on their heads, with the strong chains of Civil Justice and Martial Discipline.

1. For the administration of the first, even God himself hath given direction, *Judges and Officers shalt thou make, which shall judge the People with righteous Judgements.*

2. The second is grounded on the first Laws of the world and nature, that Force is to be repelled by Force. Yea Moses in the 20 of Exodus, and elsewhere, hath delivered us many Laws and Policies of War. But as we have heard of the neglect and abuse in both, so have we heard of the decline and ruine of many Kingdoms and States long before our daies: for that Policy hath never yet prevailed (though it hath served for a short season) where the counterfeit hath been sold for the natural, and the outward shew and formality for the substance. Of the Emperour Charles the Fourth, the

the writers of that age wittless, that he used but the name of *Justice* and good order, being more learned in the Law than in doing right, and that he had by far, more knowledge than conscience. Certainly the unjust Magistrate that fancieth to himself a solid and untransparable body of Gold, every ordinary wit can vitrifie, and make transparent pieces, and discern their corruptions; howsoever, because not daring, they cover their knowledge, but in the mean while it is also true, That constrained dissimulation, either in the proud heart, or in the oppressed, either in publick estates, or in private persons, where the fear of God is not prevalent, doth in all the leisure of her lurking, but sharpen her teeth, the voluntary being no less base, than the forced malicious. Thus it fared between the Barons of *England* and their Kings, between the Lords of *Switzerland* and their people, between the *Sicilians* and the *French*, between the *Dolphin* and *John of Burgoign*, between *Charles the Ninth* and the *French* Protestants, and between *Henry the third*, his successeur, and the Lords of *Guise*. Hereof in place of more particulars,

lars, the whole world may serve for examples.

It is a difficult piece of Geography to delineate and lay out the bounds of Authority; but it is easie enough to conceive the best use of it, and by which it hath maintained it self in lasting happiness, it hath ever acquired more honour by perswading, than by beating; for as the bonds of Reason and Love are immortal, so do all other chains or cords, both rusty and rot Noble parts of their own Royal and Politick bodies.

Husband- But we will forbear for a while *men.* to stretch this first string of *Civil Justice*; for in respect of the first sort of Men, *to wit*, of those that live by their own labour, they have never been displeased where they have been suffered to enjoy the fruit of their own travels, *Meum & Tuum*, Mine and Thine is all wherein they seek their certainty and protection. True it is, that they are the fruit-trees of the Land, which God in *Deuteronomy* commanded to be spared, they gather honey, and hardly enjoy the wax, and break the ground with great labour, giving the best of their grain to the easeful and idle.

For

Mer- For the second sort, which
chants. are the Merchants, as the first
feed the Kingdom, so do these en-
rich it; yea, their Trades, especial-
ly those which are forcible, are not
the least part of our Martial Policy,
as is hereafter proved: and to do them
right, they have in all ages and
times assisted the Kings of this Land,
not only with great sums of mo-
ney, but with great Fleets of Ships
in all their enterprizes beyond the
Seas. The second have seldome or
never offended their Princes; to en-
joy their Trades at home upon tole-
rable conditions, hath ever contented
them for the injuries received
from other Nations; give them but
the Commission of Reprisal, they will
either right themselves, or sit down
with their own loss without com-
plaint.

Gen- 3. The third sort, which are
try. the Gentry of England, these
being neither seated in the lowest
grounds, and thereby subject to the
biting of every beast, nor in the
highest Mountains, and thereby in
danger to be torn with tempests;
but the Valleys between both, have
H their

their parts in the inferior Justice,
and being spread over all, are the
Garrisons of good order throughout
the Realm.

rich it, yet their Trades, which are not
ly those which are forcible, are not
the least part of our Martial Wealth,
as is hereafter proved: and so do them
right, they have in all ages and
times assisted the Kings of this Land,
not only with great numbers of mo-
ney, but with great Fleets of Ships
in all their enterprises beyond the
Sea. The second here follows, as

For their Trade is home upon so
table conditions, hath ever contin-
ed them for the injuries received
from other Nations; give them but
the Commission, and they will
either right themselves, or it done
with their own hands without com-
plaint.

3. The third sort, which are
the Gentlemen of England, who
being neither bound in the lowest
grounds, and thereby respect to the
being of every part, not in the
highest Mountains, and thereby in
the most remote parts of the Realm,
have their

Sir *Walter Raleigh's*
OBSERVATIONS

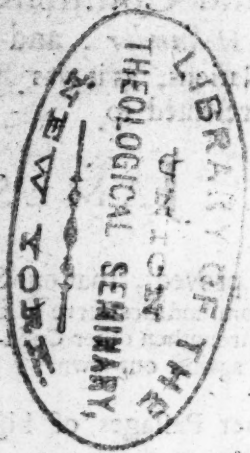
Touching
Trade and Commerce
with the *Hollander*, and
other Nations, as it was
presented to

King JAMES.

Wherein is proved, that our Sea
and Land Commodities serve to in-
rich and strengthen other Coun-
treys against our own.

With other Passages of high
Concernment.

LONDON,
Printed for *Henry Mortlock* at
the *Phoenix* in *St. Paul's Church-*
yard, and at the *White Hart* in
Westminster-Hall. 1675.





May it please your most
Excellent

MAJESTY.

According to my duty, I am imboldned to put your Majesty in mind, that about fourteen or fifteen years past, I presented you a Book of such extraordinary importance, for honour and profit of your Majesty and posterity, and doubting that it hath been laid aside and not considered of, I am encouraged (under your Majesties pardon) to present unto you one more, consisting of five propositions: neither are they grounded upon vain or idle grounds, but upon the fruition of those wonderful blessings, wherewith God hath endued your Majesties Sea and Land; by which means, you may not only enrich and fill your Coffers, but also encrease such might and strength (as shall appear, if it may stand with your Majesties good liking to put the same in execution in the true and right form:) so

that there is no doubt but it will make you in short time a Prince of such power, so great, as shall make all the Princes your neighbours, as well glad of your friendship, as fearful to offend you. That this is so, I humbly desire that your Majesty will vouchsafe to peruse this advertisement with that care and judgement which God hath given you.

Most humbly praying your Majesty, that whereas I presented these five Propositions together, as in their own natures, jointly depending one of another, and so linked together, as the distraction of any one will be an apparent main and disabling to the rest; That your Majesty would be pleased that they may not be separated, but all handled together jointly and severally, by Commissioners, with as much speed and secrecy as can be, and made fit to be reported to your Majesty, whereby I may be the better able to perform to your Highness that which I have promised, and will perform upon my life, if I be not prevented by some that may seek to hinder the honour and profit of your Majesty for their own private ends.

The

THe true ground, course and form herein mentioned, shall appear how other Countreys make themselves powerful and rich in all kinds, by Merchandize, Manufactory, and fitness of Trade, having no Commodities in their own Countrey growing to do it withal.

And herein likewise shall appear, how easie it is to draw the wealth and strength of other Countreys to your Kingdom, and what royal, rich, and plentiful means God hath given this Land to do it (which cannot be denyed) for support of traffick and continual employment of your People, for replenishing of your Majesties Coffers.

And if I were not fully assured to improve your native Commodities, with other traffick, three millions of pounds more yearly than now they are, and to bring not only to your Majesties Coffers within the space of two or three years, near two millions of pounds, but to encrease your Revenues many thousands yearly, and to please and greatly profit your people, I would not have undertaken so great a work: ~~All which will grow by advancement~~ of all kind of Merchandizing to the uttermost, thereby to bring Manufactory into the Kingdom, and to set on work all

sorts of people in the Realm, as other Nations do, which raise their greatness by the abundance of your native commodities: whilst we are parling and disputing whether it be good for us or not.

The following are the names of the

I could not have anticipated to great a
 please and greatly profit your people. I
 Revenues many thousands yearly, and to
 millions of pounds, but to create your
 of time on these years, and two
 not only to your kind a letter with
 really know how they are, and to bring
 other things I think will be of great value
 give your national commodities, with
 And if I were not fully assured in the

into the Kingdom, and in her Majesty's
 service to bring about the
 moment of all kind of advancement to the
 11 4 11



May it please your most excellenc
M A J E S T Y.

I Have diligently in my Travels observed how the Countreys herein mentioned do grow potent with abundance of all things to serve themselves and other Nations, where nothing groweth, and that their never dried fountains of wealth, by which they raise their estate to such an admirable height, as that they are at this day even a wonder to the world, proceedeth from your Majesties Seas and Lands.

I thus moved, began to dive into the depth of their policies and circumventing practices, whereby they drain and still covet to exhaust the wealth & coin of this Kingdom, and so with our own commodities to weaken us, and finally beat us quite out of trading in other Countreys; I found that they more fully obtain'd these their purposes by their

convenient priviledges, and settled constitutions, than *England* with all the Laws, and superabundance of homebred commodities which God hath vouchsafed your Sea and Land : And these, and other mentioned in this booke, are the urgent causes that provoked me in my love and bounden duty to your Majesty and my Countrey, to address my former Books to your Princely hands and consideration.

By which Priviledges they draw multitudes of Merchants to Trade with them, and many other Nations to inhabit amongst them, which makes them populous, and there they make Store-houses of all forreign Commodities, wherewith upon every occasion of scarcity and dearth, they are able to furnish forreign Countreys with plenty of those Commodities, which before in time of plenty they ingrossed, and brought home from the same places, which doth greatly augment power and treasure to their State, besides the common good in setting their poor and people on work.

To which priviledges they add smallness of Custom, and liberty of Trade, which maketh them flourish, and their
Coun-

Countray so plentiful of all kind of Coyn and Commodities, where little or nothing groweth; and their Merchants so flourish, that when a loss cometh, they scarce feel it.

To bring this to pass, they have many advantages of us, the one is, by their fashioned Ships called *Foyers*, *Hoybarks*, *Hoyes*, and others, that are made to hold great bulk of Merchandise, and to sail with a few men for profit; For example, though an *English* Ship of two hundred Tuns, and a *Holland* Ship, or any other of the petty States of the same burthen be at *Danser*, or any other place beyond the Seas, or in *England*, they do serve the Merchant better cheap by one hundred pounds in his freight, than we can, by reason he hath but nine or ten Mariners, and we near thirty; thus he saveth twenty mens meat and wages in a voyage, and so in all other their Ships, according to their burden, by which means they are freighted wheresoever they come, to great profit, whilst our Ships lie still and decay, or go to *New-castle* for Coals.

Of this their smalness of Custom inwards and outwards, we have daily experi-

experience: for if two *English* Ships, or two of any other Nations be at *Buy-deaux*, both laden with Wine of three hundred Tuns a piece, the one bound for *Holland*, or any other petty States, the other for *England*, the Merchant shall pay about nine hundred pound Custom here, and other duties, when the other in *Holland*, or any other petty States, shall be cleared for less than fifty pound, and so in all other Wares and Merchandizes accordingly, which draws all Nations to traffick with them; and although it seems but small duties which they receive, yet the multitudes of all kind of Commodities and Coyn that is brought in by themselves and others, and carryed out by themselves and others, is so great, that they receive more Custom and Duties to the State, by the greatness of their commerce in one year, than *England* doth in two years; for the one hundredth part of Commodities are not spent in *Holland*, but vented into other Countreys, which maketh all the Countrey Merchants to buy and sell, and increase Ships and Marriners to transport them.

My travells and meaning is not to diminish

diminish (neither hath been) your Majesties Revenues, but exceedingly to encrease them, as shall appear, and yet please the people, as in other parts they do.

Notwithstanding, their Excises bring them in great Revenues, yet whosoever will adventure to *Burdeaux* but for six Tuns of Wine, shall be free of Excise in his own house all the year long; and this is done of purpose to animate and encrease Merchants in their Countrey.

And if it happen that a Trade be stopped by any forraign Nation, which they heretofore usually had; or hear of any good Trading which they never had, they will hinder others, and seek either by favour, money, or force, to open the gap of Traffick for advancement of Trade amongst themselves, and employment of their people.

And when there is a new course of Trade erected, they give free customs inwards and outwards, for the better maintenance of Navigation, and encouragement of the people to that business.

Thus they and others glean the wealth and strength from us to themselves.

selves, and these reasons following procure them this advantage of us.

1. The Merchant Staplers which make all things in abundance, by reason of their Store-houses continually replenished with all kind of Commodities.

2. The liberty of free Traffick for strangers to buy and sell in *Holland*, and other Countreys and States, as if they were free-born, maketh great intercourse.

3. The small duties levied upon Merchants, draws all Nations to trade with them.

4. Their fashioned Ships continually freighted before ours by reason of their few Mariners, and great bulk, serving the Merchant cheap.

5. Their forwardness to further all manner of trading.

6. Their wonderful employment of their Busses for fishings, and the great returns they make.

7. Their giving free Custome inwards and outwards, for any new erected Trade, by means whereof they have gotten already almost the sole Trade into their hands.

All Nations may buy and sell freely

in

in *France*, and there is free Custom outwards twice or thrice in a year, at which time our Merchants themselves do make their great sales of English Commodities, and do buy and lade their great hulk of *French* Commodities to serve for the whole year; and in *Rochel* in *France*, and in *Britain*, free Custom all the year-long, except some small Toll, which makes great Traffick, and maketh them flourish.

In *Denmark* to encourage and enrich the Merchants, and to increase Ships and Mariners, free Custom all the year long for their own Merchants, except one Moneth between *Bartholomew-tide* and *Michaelmas*.

The *Havne* Towns have advantage of us, as *Holland*, and other petty States have, and in most things imitate them, which makes them exceeding rich and plentiful of all kind of Commodities and Coyn, and so strong in ships and Mariners, that some of their Towns have near one thousand sail of Ships.

The Merchandizes of *France*, *Portugal*, *Spain*, *Italy*, *Thurkey*, *East* and *West Indies*, are transported most by the *Hollanders* and other petty States into the *East* and *North-East* Kingdoms of *Pomerland*.

norland, Spruce-land, Poland, Denmark, Sweed-land, Leifland and Germany, and the Merchandizes brought from the last mentioned Kingdoms, being wonder-ful many, are likewise by the Holland-ers and other petty States most trans-ported into the Southern and Western Dominions, and yet the situation of England lyeth far better for a Store-house to serve the Southern East and North-East Regions, than theirs doth, and hath far better means to do it, if we will bend our course for it.

No sooner a dearth of Fish, Wine, or Corn here, and other Merchandize, but forthwith the Embdeners, Hambur-gers, and Hollanders out of their Store-houses lade fifty, or one hundred ships, or more, dispersing themselves round about this Kingdom, and carry away great store of coyn and wealth for little commodity in those times of dearth, by which means they suck our Common-wealth of their riches, cut down our Merchants, and decay our Navigation, not with their natural commodities which grow in their own Countries, but the Merchandizes of other Coun-tries and Kingdoms.

Therefore it is far more easie to
serve.

serve our selves, hold up our Merchants, and encrease our Ships and Mariners, and strengthen the Kingdom, and not only keep our money in our own Realm, which other Nations still rob us of, but bring in theirs who carry ours away, and make the bank of Coyn and Store-house to serve other Nations as well and far better cheap than they.

Amsterdam is never without seven hundred thousand Quarters of Corn, besides the plenty they daily vent, and none of this groweth in their own Countrey: a Dearth in *England, France, Spain, Italy, Portugal*, and other places, is truly observed to enrich *Holland* seven years after, and likewise the petty States.

For example, the last Dearth six years past, the *Hamburgers, Embdeners, and Hollanders* out of their Store-houses furnished this Kingdom, and from *Southampton, Exeter, and Bristol*, in a year and a half they carried away near two hundred thousand pounds from these parts only: then what great quantity of Coyns was transported round about your Kingdom from every Port Town, and from your City
of

of London, and other Cities cannot be esteemed so little as two millions, to the great decay of your Kingdom, and impoverishing your people, discredit to the Company of Merchants, and dishonour to the Land, that any Nation that have no Corn in their own Countrey growing, should serve this famous Kingdom, which God hath so enabled within it self.

They have a continual Trade into this Kingdom with five or six hundred Ships yearly, with Merchandizes of other Countreys and Kingdoms, and store them up in store-houses here until the prices rise to their minds, and we trade not with fifty Ships into their Countrey in a year, and the said number are about this Realm every Eastern wind for the most part to lade Coals, and other Merchandize.

Unless there be a scarcity, or dearth, or high prices, all Merchants do forbear that place where great impositions are laid upon the Merchandize, and whose places slenderly shipped, ill served, and at dear rates, and oftentimes in scarcity, and want employment for the people, and those petty States finding truly by experience, that small
 20 duties

duties imposed upon Merchandize draw all Traffick unto them, and free liberty for strangers to buy and sell doth make continual Mart; therefore what Excises or impositions are laid upon the common people, yet they still ease, uphold and maintain the Merchants by all possible means, of purpose to draw the wealth and strength of Christendom to themselves, whereby it appeareth though the duties be but small, yet the customes for going out and coming in do so abound, that they increase their Revenues greatly, and make profit, plenty and employment of all sorts by Sea and Land to serve themselves and other Nations, as is admirable to behold. : And likewise the great commerce which groweth by the same means, enableth the common people to bear their burthen laid upon them, and yet they grow rich by reason of the great commerce and Trade, occasioned by their convenient privileges, and commodious constitutions.

There was an intercourse of Traffick in *Genoa*, and there was the flower of commerce, as appeareth by their antient Records, and their sumptuous buildings. For all Nations traded with
Mer-

Merchandize to them, and there was the Store-house of all *Italy* and other places; but after they had set a great custom of *xvi. per cent.* all Nations left trading with them, which made them give themselves wholly to usury, and at this day we have not three ships go there in a year: but to the contrary, the Duke of *Flörence* builded *Iegorn*, and set small Custom upon Merchandize, and gave them great and pleasing privileges, which hath made a rich and strong City with a flourishing State.

Furthermore touching some particulars needful to be considered, of the mighty huge fishing that ever could be heard of in the world, is upon the coasts of *England*, *Scotland*, and *Ireland*; but the great Fishery is in the *Low Countries*, and other petty States, where-with they serve themselves and all Christendom, as shall appear.

In four Towns in the *East Kingdoms* within the *Sound*, *Quinsbrough*, *Elbing*, *Statten*, and *Dantzick*, there are carried and vented in a year, between thirty and forty thousand Last of Herrings sold but at fifteen or sixteen pounds the Last, is about 620000 l. and we none.

Besides,

Besides, Denmark, Norway, Sweden, Leifland, Rie, Nevill, the Narue, and other Port Towns within the Sound, there is carried and vented above 10000 Lasts of Herrings sold at fifteen or sixteen pounds the Last, is 170000 pounds; more yearly in such request are our Herrings there, that they are often times sold for 20, 24, 30 and 36 pound the Last, and we send not one barrel into all those East Countreys.

The *Hollanders* sent into *Russia* near fifteen hundred Last of Herrings, sold about thirty shillings the barrel, amounteth to 27000 pound, and we but about twenty or thirty Lasts.

To *Stoade*, *Hambrough*, *Breame*, and *Embsden* upon the River of *Elve*, *Weaser*, and *Embs*, are carried and vented of *Fish* and *Herrings* about 6000 Lasts, sold about fifteen or sixteen pound the Last, is 100000 *l.* and we none.

Cleaveland, *Gulickland*, up the River of *Rhine* to *Cullen*, *Frankford*, or the *Maine*, and so over all *Germany*, is carried and vented *Fish* and *Herrings* near 22000 Lasts, sold at twenty pound the Last, is 440000 *l.* and we none.

Up the River of *Maze*, *Leigh*, *Mastrich*, *Yellow*, *Sutphin*, *Deventer*, *Campen*, *Swale*, and all over *Lubeland* is carried and vented 7000 Lasts of Herrings, sold at twenty pound the Last, is 140000 pound, and we none.

To *Gilderland*, *Artois*, *Henault*, *Brabant*, *Flanders*, up the River of *Antwerp*, all over the Arch Dukes Countreys, are carried and vented between eight or nine thousand Lasts sold at eighteen pound the Last is 171000 l. and we none.

The *Hollanders* and others carried of all sorts of Herrings to *Roan* only in one year, besides all other parts of *France*, 50000 Lasts of Herrings sold at twenty pound the Last, is 100000 l. and we not one hundred Last thither: they are sold oftentimes there for twenty, and four and twenty, and thirty pound the Last.

Between *Christmas* and *Lent*, the duties for *Fish* and *Herrings* came to 15000 Crowns at *Roane* only that year, the late Queen deceased; Sir *Thomas Parrie* was Agent there then, and *S. Savors* his man knows it to be true, who handled the business for pulling down the Impositions. Then, what

what great summs of money came to all in the Port Towns to enrich the French Kings Coffers, and to all the Kings and States throughout Christendom to enrich their Coffers; besides the great quantity vented to the Straights, and the multitude spent in the Low Countries, where there is likewise sold for many a hundred thousand pound more yearly, is necessary to be remembred; and the stream to be turned to the good of this Kingdom, to whose Sea coasts God only hath sent and given these great blessings and multitude of riches for us to take, howsoever it hath been neglected to the hurt of this Kingdom, that any Nation should carry away out of this Kingdom yearly great masses of money for Fish taken in our Seas, and sold again by them to us, which must needs be a great dishonour to our Nation, and hindrance to this Realm.

From any Port Town of any Kingdom within Christendom, the Bridgmaster or the Wharfmaster for twenty shillings a year will deliver a true Note of the number of Lasts of Herrings brought to their Wharfs, & their prices commonly they are sold at, but the number

number brought to *Danſke, Cullen, Rotterdam,* and *Enchuſen* is ſo great, as it will coſt three, four, or five pound for a true Note.

The abundance of Corn groweth in the *Eaſt Kingdoms*, but the great Store-houſes for grain to ſerve Chriſtendom and the Heathen Countreys in time of dearth, is in the *Low-Countries*, wherewith upon every occaſion of ſcarcity and dearth they do enrich themſelves ſeven years after, imploy their people, and get great freights for their Ships in other Countries, and we not one in that courſe.

The mighty Vineyards and ſtore of Salt is in *France* and *Spain*; but the great Vintage and Staple of Salt is in the *Low-Countries*, and they ſend near one thouſand ſail of ſhips with Salt and Wine only into the *Eaſt Kingdoms* yearly, beſides other places, and we not one in that courſe.

The exceeding Groves of Wood are in the *Eaſt Kingdoms*, but the huge piles of *wainſcot, Clapboard, Fir-deal, Maſts,* and Timber is in the *Low-Countries*, where none grow, wherewith they ſerve themſelves, and other parts, and this Kingdom with thoſe Commodities ;

tyes; they have five or six hundred great long ships continually using that Trade, and we none in that course.

The *wooll, cloath, Lead, Tin*, and divers other Commodities are in *England*, but by means of our *wooll & Cloth* going out rough, undrest, and undyed, there is an exceeding *Manufactory* and *Drapery* in the *Low-Countreys*, wherewith they serve themselves, and other Nations, and advance greatly the employment of their people at home, and Traffick abroad, and put down ours in forreign parts, where our Merchants trade unto, with our own Commodities.

We send into the *East Kingdoms* yearly but one hundred ships, and our Trade chiefly dependeth upon three Towns, *Elbing, Kingsborough*, and *Danske*, for making our Sails, and buying their Commodities sent into this Realm at dear rates, which this Kingdom bears the burthen of.

The *Low-Countreys* send into the *East Kingdoms* yearly about three thousand ships, trading into every City and Port Town, taking the advantage, and venting their Commodities to exceeding profit, and buying and lading their
I ships

ships with plenty of those Commodities, which they have from every of those Towns 20 per Cent. better cheap than we, by reason of the difference of the Coyn, and their *Fish* yields ready money, which greatly advanceth their Traffick, and decayeth ours.

They send into *France, Spain, Portugal, Italy*, from the *East Kingdoms* that passeth through the *Sound*, and through your narrow *Seas*, yearly of the *East Countrey Commodities* about two thousand ships, and we none in that course.

They Trade into all Cities, and Port Towns in *France*, and we chiefly to five or six.

They traffick into every City and Port Town round about this Land, with five or six hundred ships yearly, and we chiefly but to three Towns in their Countrey, and but with forty ships.

Notwithstanding the *Low Countreys* have as many ships and vessels as eleven Kingdoms of *Christendom* have, let *England* be one, and build every year near one thousand ships, and not a timber tree growing in their own Countrey, and that also all their home-bred Commodities

modities that grow in their Land in a year, (less than one hundred good ships are able to carry them away at one time,) yet they handle the matter so for setting them all on work, that their Traffick with the Haunce Towns exceeds in shipping all *Christendom*.

We have all things of our own in superabundance to increase Traffick, and Timber to build ships, and Commodities of our own to lade about one thousand ships and vessels at one time, (besides the great fishing) and as fast as they have made their voyages, might re-lade again, and so year after year all the year long to continue, yet our Ships and Marriners decline, and Traffick and Merchants daily decay.

The main bulk and Mass of *Herrings* from whence they raise so many millions yearly that enrich other Kingdoms, *Kings* and *States* Coffers, and likewise their own people, proceedeth from your Seas and Lands, and the return of the Commodities and Coyne they bring home in exchange of Fish and other Commodities are so huge, as would require a large discourse apart; all the amends they make us is, they beat us out of Trade in all parts with

with our own Commodities.

For instance, we had a great Trade in *Russia* seventy years, and about fourteen years past we sent store of goodly ships to trade in those parts, and three years past we set out but four, and this last year two or three; but to the contrary, the *Hollanders* about 20 years since traded thither with two ships only, yet now they are increased to about thirty or fourty, and one of their ships is as great as two of ours, and at the same time (in their troubles there) that we decreased, they increased, and the chiefest Commodities they carry with them thither, is *English* Cloath, Herrings taken in our Seas, *English* Lead and Pewter made of our Tin, besides other Commodities; all which we may do better than they. And although it be a cheap Countrey, and the Trade very gainful, yet we have almost brought it to nought, by disorderly trading, joynt-stock, and the Merchants banding themselves one against another.

And so likewise we used to have 8. or 9. great ships to go continually a fishing to *Wardhouse*, and this year but one, and so *per rato* they out-go us in all kind of fishing and merchandizing in all Countreys,

treys, by reason they spare no cost, nor deny no priviledges that may incourage advancement of Trade and Manufactory.

*Now if it please, and with your
Majesties good liking stand,*

TO take notice of these things, which I have conceived to be fit for your Majesties consideration, which in all humbleness (as duty bindeth me) I do tender unto your Majesty, for the unfeigned zeal I bear to the advancement of your honour and profit, and the general good of your subjects; it being apparent, that no three Kingdoms in *Christendome* can compare with your Majesty for support of Traffick, and continuall imployment of your people within themselves, having so many great means both by Sea and Land to enrich your Coffers, multiply your Navy, enlarge your Traffick, make your Kingdoms powerful, and your people rich; yet through idleness they are poor, wanting imployment, many of your Land and Coast Towns much ruined, and your Kingdom in need

of Coyn, your Shipping, Traffick, and Marriners decayed, whilst your Majesties Neighbour Princes, without these means, abound in wealth, inlarge their Towns, increase their Shipping, Traffick, and Marriners, and find out such employment for their people, that they are all advantageous to their Commonwealth, only by ordaining commodious Constitutions in Merchandizing, and fulness of Trade in Manufactory.

*God hath blest your Majesty with
incomparable benefits:*

AS with Copper, Lead, Iron, Tin, Alum, Copperas, Saffron, Fells, and divers other native Commodities, to the number of about one hundred, and other Manufactories vendible to the number of about one thousand, (as shall appear) besides Corn, whereof great quantity of Beer is made, and most transported by strangers, as also Wooll, whereof much is shipped forth unwrought into Cloath or Stuffs, and Cloath transported undrest and undied, which doth imploy and maintain near fifty thousand people in forreign parts,
your

your Majesties people wanting the employment in *England*, many of them being inforced to live in great want, and seek it beyond the Seas.

Coals which do imploy hundreds of Strangers ships yearly to transport them out of this Kingdom, whilst we do not imploy twenty ships in that course.

Iron Ordnance, which is a jewel of great value, far more than it is accounted, by reason that no other Countrey could ever attain unto it, although they have assayed with great charge.

Your Majesty hath Timber of your own for building of ships, and commodities plenty to lade them, which commodities other Nations want, yet your Majesties people decline in Shipping, Traffick, and Marriners.

These Inconveniencies happen by three causes especially.

1. The unprofitable course of Merchandizing.
2. The want of course of full Manufactory of our home-bred commodities.

3. The undervaluing of our Coynes, contrary to the rules of other Nations.

For Instance.

The Merchant Adventurers by overtrading upon credit, or with money taken up upon exchange, whereby they lose usually ten or twelve, and sometimes fifteen or sixteen *per cent.* are enforced to make sale of their Cloaths at under-rates, to keep their credit, whereby Cloath being the Jewel of the Land, is undervalued, and the Merchant in short time eaten out.

The Merchants of *Ipswich*, whose Trade for *Elbing* is chiefly for fine cloaths, and some few sorting cloaths, all dyed and drest within our Land, do for the most part, buy there fine cloaths upon Time, and by reason they go so much upon credit, they are enforced (not being able to stand upon their Markets) to sell, giving 15. or 18. Moneths day of payment for their cloaths, and having sold them, they then presently sell their Bills so taken for cloath, allowing after the rate of fourteen or fifteen,

fifteen, and sometimes twenty *per cent.* which money they imploy forthwith in wares at excessive prices, and lose as much more that way, by that time their wares be sold at home: Thus by over-running themselves upon credit, they disable themselves and others, inhancing the prices of forreign commodities, and pulling down the rates of our own.

The West-Country Merchants that trade with cloaths into *France* or *Spain*, do usually imploy their servants (young men of small experience) who by cunning combining of the *French* and *Spanish* Merchants, are so entrapped, that when all Customs and charges be accounted, their Masters shall hardly receive their principal moneys. As for returns out of *France*, their silver and gold is so highly rated, that our Merchants cannot bring it home, but to great loss; therefore the *French* Merchants set higher rates upon their commodities, which we must either buy dear, or let our money's lye dead there a long time, until we may conveniently imploy the same.

The Northern Merchants of *York*, *Hull* and *Newcastle*, traile only in white Kerseys and coloured, dozzens, and

Is

every

every Merchant, be his Adventure never so small, doth for the most part, send over an unexperienced youth, unfit for merchandizing, which bringeth to the stranger great advantage, but to his Master & Common-weal great hinderance; for they before their goods be landed, go to the stranger, and buy such quantities of Iron, Flax, Corn, and other Commodities, as they are bound to lade their ships withal, which ships they ingage themselves to relade within three weeks, or a moneth, and do give the price the Merchant stranger asketh, because he gives them credit, and lets them ship away their Iron, Flax, and other commodities, before they have sold their Kerfies, and other commodities, by which means extraordinary dear commodities are returned into this Realm, and the servant also inforced to sell his Cloaths underfoot, and oftentimes to loss, to keep his credit, and to make payment for the goods before shipped home, having some twenty dayes, or a moneths respite to sell the Cloaths, and to give the Merchant satisfaction for his Iron, Flax, and other wares; by which extremities our home-bred commodities are abased.

Touch-

Touching Manufactory.

There have been about fourscore thousand undrest and undyed Cloaths yearly transported.

It is therefore evident, that the Kingdom hath been yearly deprived of about 400000/. within this five and fifty years, which is near twenty millions that would have been gained by the labour of poor workmen in that time, with the Merchants gains for bringing in dying stuffs, and return of Cloaths drest and dyed, with other benefits to the Realm, besides exceeding enlarging of Traffick, and increase of ships and Mariners.

There would have been gained in that time about three millions by increase of Custom upon commodities returned for Cloaths drest and dyed, and for dying stuffs, which would have more plentifully been brought in and used for the same.

There hath been also transported in that time yearly by Bayle, Northern and Devonshire Kersies white, about

50000.

50000. Cloaths, counting three Kerses to a Cloath, whereby hath been lost about five millions by those sorts of Cloaths in that time, which would have come to poor workmen for their labour, with the Customs for dying stuffs, and the peoples profit for bringing them in, with returns of other commodities and fraights for shipping.

Baile are transported white into *Amsterdam*, and being there drest and dyed, are shipped into *Spain*, *Portugal*, and other Kingdoms, where they are sold in the name of *Flemish* Baile, setting their own Town Seal upon them, so that we lose the very name of our home-bred commodities, and other Countreys get the reputation and profit thereof. Lamentable it is, that this Land should be deprived of so many above-mentioned Millions, and that our Native commodities of Cloath, ordained of God for the natural subjects, being so royal and rich in it self, should be driven to so small advantage of reputation and profit to your Majesty and people, and so much improved and intercepted by strangers, considering that God hath enabled, and given your Majesty power

to advance dressing and dying, and transporting of all your Cloaths, within a year or two; I-speak it knowingly, to shew how it may be done laudably, lawfully, and approved to be honourable, feasible, and profitable.

All the Companies of your Land transport their cloaths drest and dyed, to the good of your Kingdom, except the Merchant Adventurers, whereby the *Eastland* and *Turkey* Merchants, with other Companies, do increase your Majesties customes by bringing in, and spending dying Stuffs, and setting your people on work, by dressing before they transport them; and they might increase far more custome to your Majesty, and make much more profit to themselves, and this Realm, and set many thousands of poor people more on work for dressing and dying, and likewise imploy more Ships and Mariners, for bringing in dying Stuffs, were it not for the Merchant Adventurers, who transport their cloaths white, rough, undrest and undyed, into the *Low Countries*, where they sell them to the strangers, who afterwards dress, dye & stretch them to such unreasonable lengths, contrary to our Law, that they pre-

vent

vent and fore-stall our Markets; and cross the just prohibitions of our State and Realm, by their Agents and Factors, lying in divers places with our own cloaths, to the great decay of this Kingdom in general, and discredit of our cloaths in particular.

If the accompt were truly known, it would be found that they make not clear profit, only by cloath transported rough, undrest, and undied, sixty thousand pounds a year: But it is most apparent your Majesty in your customes, your Merchants in their sales and prices, your subjects in their labours, for lack of not dressing and dying, your ships and Mariners in not bringing in of dying stuffs, and spending of Allum, is hindred yearly near a million of pounds, so that trade is driven to the great hindrance of your Majesty and people, by permitting your native commodities to pass rough, undrest, and undied, by the Merchant Adventurer.

Touch

Touching Fishing.

THe great Sea business of Fishing doth employ near twenty thousand ships, and vessels, and four hundred thousand people are employed yearly upon your Coast of *England, Scotland, and Ireland*, with sixty ships of War, which may prove dangerous.

The *Hollanders* only have about three thousand ships to fish withal, and fifty thousand people are employed yearly by them upon your Majesties coasts of *England, Scotland, and Ireland*.

These three thousand fishing ships and vessels of the *Hollanders*, do employ near nine thousand other ships and vessels, and one hundred and fifty thousand persons more by Sea and Land to make provision to dress & transport the Fish they take, and return commodities, whereby they are inabled, and do build yearly one thousand ships and vessels, having not one timber tree growing in their own Countrey, nor home-bred commodities to lade one hundred ships, and yet they have twenty thousand ships and vessels, and all employed.

King

King Henry the seventh, desirous to make his Kingdoms powerful and rich, by encrease of Ships and Mariners, and employment of his people, sent unto his Sea-coast Towns, moving them to set up the great and rich fishing, with promise to give them needful priviledges, and to furnish them with loans of money, if need were, to encourage them, yet his people were slack. Now since I have traced this business, and made mine endeavours known unto your Majesty, your Noblemen, able Merchants, and others, (who having set down under their hands for more assurance) promised to disburse large summs of money for the building up of this great and rich large Sea-City; which will encrease more strength to your Land, give more comfort, and do more good to all your Cities and Towns, than all the Companies of your Ringdom; having fit and needful priviledges, for the upholding and strengthening of so weighty and needful a business.

For example, twenty Busses built and put into a Sea coast Town where there is not one Ship before there must be to carry, recarry, transport, and make

make provision for one Buſs three Ships; likewise every Ship ſetting on work thirty ſeveral trades and occupations, and four hundred thouſand perſons by Sea and Land, inſomuch as three hundred perſons are not able to make one Fleet of Nets in four months for one Buſs which is no ſmall employment.

Thus by twenty Buſſes are ſet on work, near eight thouſand perſons by Sea and Land, and an encrease of above one thouſand Mariners, and a Fleet of eighty ſail of Ships to belong to one Town, where none were before to take the wealth out of the Sea to enrich and ſtrengthen the Land, only by raiſing of twenty Buſſes.

Then what good one thouſand, or two thouſand will do, I leave to your Majesties conſideration.

It is worthy to be noted, how neceſſary Fiſhermen are to the Commonwealth, and how needful to be advanced and cheriſhed, *viz.*

1. For taking Gods bleſſing out of the Sea to enrich the Realm, which otherwiſe we loſe.

2. For ſetting the people on work.

3. For making plenty and cheapneſs in the Realm.

4. For

4. For encreasing of Shipping, to make the Land powerful.

5. For a continual Nursery for breeding and encreasing our Mariners.

6. For making employment of all sorts of people, as blind, lame, and others by Sea and Land from ten or twelve years and upwards.

7. For enriching your Majesties Coffers, for Merchandises returned from other Countries for *Fish* and *Herrings*.

8. For the encrease and enabling of Merchants, which now droop and daily decay.

Touching the Coyn.

FOr the most part, all Monarchies and free States, both *Heathen* and *Christian*, as *Turky*, *Barbary*, *France*, *Polland*, and others, do hold for a rule of never-failing profit, to keep their Coyn at higher rates within their own Territories, than it is in other Kingdoms.

The

The Causes.

1. To preserve the Coyn within their own Territories.
2. To bring unto themselves the Coyn of Forreign Princes.
3. To enforce Merchant strangers to take their commodities at high rates, which this Kingdom bears the burthen of.

For instance.

THE King of *Barbary* perceiving the Trade of Christian Merchants to encrease in his Kingdom, & that the returns out of his Kingdoms were most in Gold, whereby it was much enhanced, raised his Ducket (being then currant for three ounces) to four, five, and six ounces; nevertheless it was no more worth in *England*, being so raised, than when it went for three ounces.

This Ducket currant for three ounces in *Barbary*, was then worth in *England* seven shillings and six pence, and no more worth, being raised to six ounces, since which (time adding to it a small piece of Gold) he hath raised it to eight, and lastly to ten ounces, yet at this day
it

it is worth but ten shillings, and one penny, notwithstanding your Majesties late raising of your gold.

Having thus raised his gold, he then devised to have plenty of silver brought into his Kingdom, raised the Royal of eight, being but two ounces, to three and three pence half penny, which caused great plenty of silver to be brought in, and to continue in his Kingdom.

France.

THe *English Jacobus* goeth for three and twenty shillings in Merchandizing.

The *French Crown* for seven shillings and six pence.

Also the King hath raised his silver four Sower in the Crown.

North-Holland.

THe double *Jacobus* goeth for three and twenty shillings sterling.

The *English Shilling* is there eleven stivers, which is two shillings over in the pound.

Poland.

Poland.

THe King of *Poland* raised his *Hungary Ducket* from 56 to 77 $\frac{1}{2}$ *Polish* groshes, and the Rix Dollor from 36 to 47 & $\frac{1}{2}$ groshes, the Rix Dollor worth in *Poland* 47 and $\frac{1}{2}$ groshes, is by account valued at 6 s. 4. d. Sterling; and here in *England* is worth but 4 s. 7 d. The *Hungary Ducket* 77 is worth by account in *Poland* 10 s. 4. d. and in *England* is worth but 7 s. 10 d. The *Jacobus* of *England* here currant for 22 s. in *Poland* 24 s. at the rate of 7 s. 10 d. for the *Hungary Ducket*.

Now to turn the stream and riches raised by your Majesties native commodities into the natural channel, from whence it hath been a long time diverted;

May

*May it please your Majesty to
consider these points fol-
lowing.*

1. **W**Hether it be not fit that a State-Merchant be settled within your Dominions, which may both dispose more profitably of the riches thereof, and encounter policies of Merchant strangers, who now go beyond us in all kind of profitable Merchandizing.
2. Whether it be not necessary that your native commodities should receive their full Manufactory by your Subjects within your Dominions.
3. Whether it be not fit the Coals should yield your Majesty and Subjects a better value, by permitting them to pass out of the Land, and that they be in your Subjects shipping only transported.
4. Whether it be not fit your Majesty presently raise your Coyn to as high rates, as it is in the parts beyond the Seas.
5. Whether it be not necessary that the great Sea-business of Fishing be forthwith set forward.

If

If it please your Majesty to approve of these considerations, and accordingly to put them in a right course of execution, I assure myself (by Gods help) in short time your Majesties Customes, and the continual comings into your Coffers, will be exceedingly increased, your Ships and Mariners trebled, your Land and waste Towns (which are now run out of Gates) better replenished, and your people employed, to the great enriching and honour of your Kingdom, with the applause, and to the comfort of all your Loyal Subjects.

May it please your Majesty.

I Have the rather undergone the pains to look into their policies, because I have heard them profess they hoped to get the whole Trade and Shipping of Christendom into their own hands, as well for transportation, as otherwise for the command and mastery of the Seas, to which end I find that they do daily encrease their Traffick, augmenting their Shipping, multiplying their Mariners, strength, and wealth in all kinds, whereat I have grieved the more, when I considered how God hath endued this
King.

Kingdom above any three Kingdoms in Christendom with divers varieties of home-bred commodities, which others have not, and cannot want, and indued us with sundry other means to continue and maintain trade of Merchandizing and Fishing beyond them all, whereby we might prevent the deceivers, ingross the commodities of the ingrossers, enrich our selves, and increase our Navigation, Shipping, and Mariners, so as it would make all Nations to vail the Bonnet to *England*, if we would not be still wanting to our selves in employment of our people.

Which people being divided into three parts, two parts of them are meer spenders and consumers of a Commonwealth, therefore I aim at these points following.

To allure and encourage the people for their private gain, to be all workers and erecters of a Commonwealth.

To enrich and fill your Majesties Coesers by a continual coming in, and make your people wealthy, by means of their great and profitable trading and employment.

To vent our home-bred commodities to far more reputation, and much more profit

profit to the King, the Merchant, and the Kingdom.

To return the Merchandizes of other Countreys at far cheaper rates than now they are, to the great good of the Realm in general.

To make the Land powerful by increasing of Ships and Marriners.

To make your peoples takings in general to be much more every day, than now they are, which by Gods help, will grow continually more and more by the great concourse and commerce that will come by settled constitutions and convenient priviledges, as in other parts they do by this their great freedom of Trade.

All this, and much more is done in other Countreys, where nothing groweth, so that of nothing they make great things.

Then how much more mighty things might we make, where so great abundance, and variety of home-bred commodities, and rich materials grows, for your people to work upon, and other plentiful means to do that withall, which other Nations neither have, nor cannot want, but of necessity must be furnished from hence.

And now whereas our merchandizing is wild, utterly confused, and out of frame, as at large appeareth, a State-Merchant will roundly and effectually bring all the premises to pass, fill your Havens with ships, those ships with Marriners, your Kingdom full of Merchants, their houses full of out-landish Commodities, and your Coffers full of Coin as in other parts they do, and your people shall have just cause to hold in happy memory, that your Majesty was the beginner of so profitable, praise-worthy, and renowned a work, being the true Philosophers stone to make your Majesty a rich and potent King, and your Subjects happy people, only by setting of a State-Merchant, whereby your people may have fulness of Trade and Manufactory, and yet hold both honourable and profitable Government without breakings of Companies.

And for that in the setting of so weighty a business, many things of great consequence must necessarily fall into consideration, I humbly pray that your Majesty may be pleased (for the bringing of this great service to light) to give me leave to nominate the Commissioners, and your Majesty to give them

them power to call before them such men as they shall think fit to confer with upon oath, or otherwise as occasion shall offer; that the said Commissioners with all speed, for the better advancement of this honourable and profitable work, may prepare, and report the same unto your Majesty.

SEAL

Your Majesties most loyal and true-hearted Subject.

GOVERNMENT.

~~That the State of Government is applied to~~
~~the two great pillars of the State, viz. Civil~~
~~Justice, and Martial Policy, which are~~
~~grounded out of Husbandry, Merchandise,~~
~~and Gentry of this Kingdom.~~

THEY say, that the goodliest Co-
untry which eyes on the high
Mountains of Libanus, think
their roots between the cliffs of hard
rocks, the better to beat themselves
against the strong storms that blow
thence. As Nature hath instructed
these

their power to call before them such
men as they shall think fit to consult
with them in the management of the
affairs of the Kingdom, and to report
the same unto your Majesty.

THE
SEAT
OF
GOVERNMENT.

*That the Seat of Government is upheld by
the two great pillars thereof, viz. Civil
Justice, and Martial Policy, which are
framed out of Husbandry, Merchandize,
and Gentry of this Kingdom.*

They say, that the goodliest Ce-
dars which grow on the high
Mountains of *Libanus*, thrust
their roots between the cliffs of hard
Rocks, the better to bear themselves
against the strong storms that blow
there. As Nature hath instructed
these

those Kings of Trees, so hath Reason taught the Kings of Men to root themselves in the hardy hearts of their faithful Subjects. And as those Kings of Trees have large Tops, so have the Kings of men large Crowns, whereof as the first would be soon broken from their bodies, were they not under-born by many branches, so would the other easily totter, were they not fastened on their heads, with the strong chains of Civil Justice, and Martial Discipline.

1. For the administration of the first, even God himself hath given direction, *Judges and Officers shalt thou make, which shall judge the people with righteous judgments.*

2. The second is grounded on the first Laws of the World and Nature, that force is to be repelled by force. Yea, *Moses* in the twentieth of *Exodus*, and elsewhere, hath delivered us many Laws and Policies of War. But as we have heard of the neglect and abuse in both, so have we heard of the decline and ruine of many Kingdoms and States long before our dayes; for that Policy hath never yet prevailed (though it hath served for a short

season) where the counterfeit hath been sold for the natural, and the outward shew and formality for the substance. Of the Emperour *Charles* the Fourth, the Writers of that Age witness, that he used but the name of Justice and good order, being more learned in the Law, than in doing right, and that he had by far, more knowledge than conscience. Certainly the unjust Magistrate that fancieth to himself a solid and untransparable body of Gold, every ordinary wit can vitrifie, and make transparent, pierce and discern their corruptions; howsoever, because not daring, they cover their knowledge, but in the mean while it is also true, that constrained dissimulation, either in the proud heart, or in the oppressed, either in publick estates, or in private persons, where the fear of God is not prevalent, doth in all the leisure of her lurking, but sharpen her teeth, the voluntary being no less base, than the forced malicious. Thus it fared between the Parsons of *England*, and their Kings, between the Lords of *Switzerland*, and their people, between the *Sicilians*, and the *French*, between the

Dol-

Dolphin and John of Burgaign, between Charles the ninth, and the French Protestants, and between Henry the third, his Successor, and the Lord of Guise, and hereof in place of more particulars, the whole world would serve for examples.

It is a difficult piece of Geography, to delineate, and lay out the bounds of Authority; but it is easie enough to conceive the best use of it, and by which it hath maintained it self in lasting happiness, it hath ever acquired more honour by perswading, than by beating; for as the bonds of Reason and Love are immortal, so do all other chains or cords, both rusty and rot noble parts of their own royal and politick bodies.

But we will forbear for a while to stretch this first string of Civil Justice; for in respect of the first sort of men, to wit, of those that live by their own labour, they have never been displeased where they have been suffered to enjoy the fruit of their own travels, *Meum & Tuum*, Mine and Thine is all wherein they seek the certainty and protection. True it is, that they are the Fruit Trees of the Land,

which God in *Deuteronomie* commanded to be spared, they gather honey, and hardly enjoy the wax, and break the ground with great labour, giving the best of their grain to the careless and idle.

For the second sort, which are the Merchants, as the first feed the Kingdom, so do these enrich it, yea, their Trades, especially those which are forcible, are not the least part of our Martial policy, as is hereafter proved; and to do them right, they have in all ages and times assisted the Kings of this Land, not only with great sums of money, but with great Fleets of Ships in all their enterprises beyond the Seas. The second have seldome or never offended their Princes; to enjoy their Trades at home upon tolerable conditions, hath ever contented them for the injuries received from other Nations; give them but the Commission of Reprizal, they will either right themselves, or sit down with their own loss without complaint.

3. The third sort, which are the Gentry of *England*, these being neither scared in the lowest grounds, and thereby subject to the biting of every beast, nor in the highest mountains, and there-

thereby in danger to be torn with tempest; but the valleys between both, have their parts in the inferiour Justice, and being spread over all, are the Gar-risons of good order throughout the Realm.

Conclusions

The Causes of the Magnificency
and Opulency of

CITIZENS

the only way to civil-
ize and reform the in-
vase and lawless lives
of the people is

К 5 О В.

... To be dealt with by gentle and
... conversation among them - to
... to the knowledge of their lan-
... and of the mission of the
... and in the manner of living

The next is to get an admitted transition amongst them upon a solid and true foundation of Piety, Justice, and Wisdom conveyed with kindness.

OBSERVATIONS

Concerning

The Causes of the Magnificency
and Opulency of

CITIES.

THat the only way to civilize and reform the savage and barbarous lives, and corrupt Manners of such people, is,

1. To be dealt withal by gentle and loving conversation among them, to attain to the knowledge of their Language, and of the multitude of their special discommodities, and inconveniencies in their manner of living.

2. The next is to get an admired reputation amongst them, upon a solid and true foundation of Piety, Justice, and Wisdom, conjoynd with fortitude and power.

3. The

3. The third is, discreetly to possess them with a knowledge of the condition of their own estate. Thus *Orpheus* and *Amphion* were said to draw after them the beasts of the field, &c.

And this must be first wrought by a visible representation of the certainty, truth, and sincerity of these, together with the felicity of a reformed estate.

All which is but to give foundation, bottom, and firm footing unto action, and to prepare them to receive wholesome and good advice, for the future profit and felicity of themselves, and their posterity.

For the more commodious effecting of this Reformation in a rude and barbarous people, they are to be persuaded to withdraw and unite themselves into several Colonies; that so an interchangeable communication and commerce of all things may more commodiously be had, and that they may so live together in civility, for the better succour and welfare of one another: And thereby they may more easily be instructed in the Christian Faith, and governed under the Magistrates & Ministers of the King, or other
super-

superiour power, under whom this Reformation is sought; which course the Stoick tells, that *Thesens* took, after he had taken upon him the Government of the *Atbenians*, whereby he united all the people into one City, that before lived dispersedly in many Villages. The like is put in practice at this day by the *Portugals*, and *Jesuits*, that they may with less difficulty and hinderance reform the rough behaviour and savage life of the people of *Brazell*, who dwell scattered and dispersed in Caves and Cottages made of boughs and leaves of the Palm-trees.

Alexander the Great, built more than seventy Cities; *Seluous* built three Cities, called *Appanice*, to the honour of his Wife; and five called *Laodicea*, in memory of his Mother; and five called *Selencia*, to the honour of himself.

*Safety for Defence of the People
and their goods, in and near
the Town.*

IN the situation of Cities, there is to be required a place of safety, by some natural strength, commodiousness for
Na-

Navigation and Conduct, for the attaining of plenty of all good things, for the sustenance and comfort of mans life, and to draw trade and intercourse of other Nations, as if the same be situate in such sort, as many people have need to repair thither for some natural commodity, or other of the Countrey, which by traffick and transportation of commodities, whereof they have more plenty than will supply their own necessity, or for receiving of things, whereof they have scarcity. And much better will it be, if the place afford some notable commodity of it self, from whence other Nations may more readily, and at better rate, attain the same. Likewise, and withall, be so fertile, pleasant, and healthful of it self, that it may afford plenty of good things, for the delight and comfort of the inhabitants.

In former times, great Nations, Kings, and Potentates have indured sharp conflicts, and held it high policy, by all means to increase their Cities with multitudes of inhabitants. And to this end the *Romans* ever furnished themselves with strength and power, to make their neighbour people,

ple, of necessity, willing to draw themselves to *Rome* to dwell, and overthrow their Towns and Villages of mean strength, down to the ground,

So did they for this cause utterly destroy many Cities, bringing alwayes the vanquished Caprives to *Rome*, for the augmentation of that City.

Romulus, after a mighty fight with the *Sabines*, condescended to peace, upon condition that *Tatius* their King should come with all their people to dwell at *Rome*: *Tatius* did accept, and made choice of the Capitol, and the Mount *Quirinalis* for his seat and Palace.

The same course held *Tamberlain* the Great, whereby he enlarged the great *Sarmacanda*, still bringing unto it the richest and wealthiest Citizens he had subdued.

And the *Ottomans*, to make the City *Constantinople* rich and great, brought to it many thousand Families, especially Artificers, out of the subdued Cities, as *Alahunt* the Great from *Trabizond*, *Selim* the first from *Cairo*, and *Soliman* from *Tauris*.

Authority and necessity, without the consideration of the conveniences and

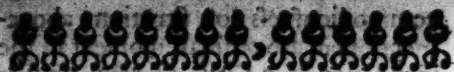
com-

commodiousness of situation above-mentioned, are of small moment in the foundation of a City, thereby only it would be unlikely, either to grow or continue in magnificency or opulency; for if profit, height, and delight, go not companions therewith, no authority or necessity can retain much people or wealth.

But if the place whereupon a City is to be founded, be commodious for the aforesaid conveniencies, which help greatly for the felicity of this life, then no doubt, the same is likely to draw much abundance of people and riches unto the same, whereby it may, by the help of Arts and Industry, in time become magnificent and glorious.

I

Sir



Sir Walter Raleigh's
LETTERS.

Sir Walter Raleigh's Letter, to
Mr. Secretary Winwood, be-
fore his Journey to Guiana.

Honourable SIR,

I Was lately perswaded by two
Gentlemen, my ancient Friends,
to acquaint your Honour with
some offers of mine, made here-
tofore for a Journey to *Guiana*,
who were of opinion, That it would be
better understood now, than when it
was first propounded, which advice ha-
ving surmounted my despair, I have
presumed to send unto your Honour the
Copies of those Letters which I then
wrote, both to his Majesty, and to the
Treasurer *Cecil*, wherein as well the rea-
sons

sons that first moved me are remembered, as the objections by him made, are briefly answered.

What I know of the riches of that place, not by hear-say, but what mine eyes have seen, I have said it often, but it was then to no end : Because those that had the greatest trust, were resolved not to believe it, not because they doubted the Truth, but because they doubted my Disposition towards themselves ; where (if God had blessed me in the enterprise) I had recovered his Majesties favour and good opinion. Other cause than this, or other suspicion they never had any. Our late worthy Prince of *wales* was extream curious in searching out the Nature of my offences. The Queens Majesty hath informed her self from the beginning. The King of *Denmark* at both times of his being here was throughly satisfied of my innocency, they would otherwise never have moved his Majesty on my behalf.

The Wife, the Brother, and the Son of a King, do not use to sue for men suspect ; but Sir, since they all have done it out of their charity,
and

and but with references to me alone, Your Honour (whose respect hath only relation to his Majesties service) strengthened by the example of those Princes, may with the more hardnesse do the like, being Princes to whom his Majesties good estate is no less dear; and all men that shall oppugn it no less hateful, than to the King himself.

It is true Sir, That his Majesty hath sometimes answered, That his Counsell knew me better than he did; meaning some two or three of them, And it was indeed my infelicity; for had his Majesty known me, I had never been here where I now am: or had I known his Majesty, they had never been so long there where they now are. His Majesty not knowing of me hath been my ruine, and his Majesty mis-knowing of them, hath been the ruine of a goodly part of his estate: but they are all of them now, some living and some dying, come to his Majesties knowledge, But Sir, how little soever his Majesty knew me, and how much soever he believed them, yet have I been bound to his Majesty both for my Life, and all that remains, of which,
but

but for his Majesty, nor Life, nor ought
 else had remained. In this respect Sir,
 I am bound to yield up the same life,
 And all I have for his Majesties service:
 To die for the King, and not by the
 King, is all the ambition I have in the
 world.

Walter Raleigh.

*Sir Walter Raleigh's Letter to his
 Wife, from Guiana.*

Sweet Heart,

I Can yet write unto you but with a
 weak hand, for I have suffered the
 most violent Calenture for fifteen
 dayes, that ever man did, and lived:
 but God that gave me a strong heart
 in all my adversities, hath also now
 strengthened it in the hell fire of
 heat.

We have had two most grievous
 sicknesses in our ship, of which forty
 two have died, and there are yet many
 sick, but having recovered the land of
 Guiana, this 12. of November, I hope
 we shall recover them. We are yet two
 hundred.

hundred men, and the rest of our Fleet are reasonable strong, strong enough I hope to perform what we have undertaken, if the diligent care at *London*, to make our strength known to the Spanish King by his Ambassadour, have not taught the Spanish King to fortifie all the entrances against us. Howsoever we must make the adventure, and if we perish, it shall be no honour for *England*, nor gain for his Majesty to lose among many other, an hundred as valiant Gentlemen as *England* hath in it.

Of Captain Baylies base coming from us at the *Canaries*, see a Letter of *Kemisbes* to Mr. *Scony*, and of the unnatural weather, storms, and rains, and winds. He hath in the same letter given a touch of the way that hath ever been sailed in fourteen dayes, now hardly performed in forty dayes. God I trust, will give us comfort in that which is to come.

In passage to the *Canaries*, I stayed at *Gemerah*, where I took water in peace, because the Countrey durst not deny it me. I received there of an English race, a Present of Oranges, Lemmons, Quinces, and Pome-granates with-

out

out which I could not have lived; those I preserved in fresh sands, and I have of them yet to my great refreshing. Your Son had never so good health, having no distemper in all the heat under the Line. All my servants have escaped but *Crab* and my Cook, yet all have had the sickness. *Crafts* and *March*, and the rest are all well. Remember my service to my Lord *Carew*, and Mr. Secretary *Winwood*.

I write not to them, for I can write of nought but miseries: yet of men of sort, we have lost our Serjeant Major, Captain *Pigot*, and his Lieutenant, Captain *Edward Hastings*, who would have died at home, for both his Liver, Spleen, and Brains were rotten. My Sons Lieutenant *Payton*, and my Cousin Mr. *Hews*, Mr. *Mordant*, Mr. *Gardiner*, Mr. *Hayward*, Captain *Jennings* the Merchant, *Hemphill* of London, and the Master Chyrurgeon, Mr. *Refner*, Mr. *Moor* the Governour of the *Baymoudas*, our Provost Marshal *William Sted*, Lieutenant *Vesle*, but to mine inestimable grief, *Hammon* and *Talbot*. By the next I trust you shall hear better of us, in Gods hands

hands we were, and in him we trust.

This bearer, Captain *Alley*, for his infirmity of his head I have lent back, an honest valiant man, he can deliver you all that is past. Commend me to my worthy friends at *Lothbury*, Sir *John Leigh* and Mr. *Bower*, whose Nephew *Knew* is well, and to my Cousin *Widdell*, and my most devoted and humble service to her Majesty.

To tell you that I might be here King of the *Indians* were a vanity, but my name hath still lived among them; here they feed me with fresh meat, and all that the Countrey yields, all offer to obey me. Commend me to poor *Carew* my Son.

From *Galliana* in *Guiana*, the fourteenth of November.

Sir Walter Raleigh's Letter to
Sir Ralph Winwood.

SIR,
As I have not hitherto given you any Account of our proceedings and passages towards the *Indies*, so have I no other subject to write of, than of
the

the greatest misfortunes that ever be-
fell any man : for whereas, for the
first, All those that Navigate between
Cape de Verd and *America* do pass be-
tween fifteen or twenty dayes at most,
we found the wind so contrary, and
which are also contrary to nature, so
many storms and rains, as we spent six
weeks in the passage, by reason where-
of, and that in so great heat we wanted
water : for at the *Isle Prano* of *Cape de
Verd*, we lost our Anchors and Cables,
and our water Casks, being driven
from the Island with a *Hurricano*, and
were like all to have perished. Great
sickness fell amongst us, and carried
away great numbers of our ablest men
both for Sea and Land. The seventeenth
of *November*, we had sight of *Guiana*,
and soon after came to Anchor in five
degrees at the River *Galliano*, here we
staid till the fourth of *December*, land-
ed our sick men, set up the Barges and
Shallops, which were brought out of
England in quarters, washed our Ships,
and took in fresh water, being fed and
cherished by the *Indians* of my old ac-
quaintance, with a great deal of love
and respect. My self being in the hands
of death these six weeks, and was not
able

able otherwise to move than as I was carried in a Chair, gave order to five small ships, to sail into *Orinoque*, having Captain *Kemis* for their Conductor towards the Mines, and in those five Ships five Companies of fifty under the command of Captain *Parlex*, and Captain *North*, brethren to the Lord *Mounteagle* and the Lord *North*, valiant Gentlemen, and of infinite patience for the labour, hunger, and heat which they have endured, my Son had the third Company, Captain *Thornix* of *Kent* the fourth Company, Captain *Chidley*, by his Lieutenant, the fifth: but as my Serjeant Major Captain *Piggot* of the *Low Countreys* died in the former miserable passage, so my Lieutenant *Sir Warhams S. Lister* lay sick without hope of life, and the charge conferred on my Nephew *George Raleigh*, who had also served long with infinite commendations, but by reason of my absence, and of *Sir Warhams*, was not so well obeyed as the Enterprize required. As they passed up the River, the *Spaniard* began the War, and shot at us both with their Ordnance and Muskets, whereupon the Companies were
old for-

forced to charge them, and soon after
 beat them out of the Town. In the as-
 sault, my Son (more desirous of ho-
 nour than safety) was slain, with whom
 (to say truth) all the respects of this
 world have taken end in me. And al-
 though these five Captains had as weak
 Companies as ever followed vallant
 Leaders, yet were there amongst them
 some twenty or thirty vallant adven-
 turous Gentlemen, and of singular
 courage, as of my Sons Company, Mr.
 Knivet, Mr. Hammon, Mr. Langworth,
 Mr. John Pledington, his Officers,
 Sir John Hambden, Mr. Simon Lee, Cor-
 poral of the Field, Mr. Hammon the el-
 der Brother, Mr. Nicholas of Backingham,
 Mr. Roberts of Kent, Mr. Parn, Mr. Pe-
 sham, Mr. Mustlinax, Mr. Winter and his
 Brother, Mr. Wray, Mr. Miles Herbert,
 Mr. Bradshaw, Captain Hall, and
 others.

Sir, I have set down the names of
 these Gentlemen, to the end, that
 if his Majesty shall have cause to use
 their services, it may please you to take
 notice of them for very sufficient Gen-
 tlemen. The other five ships staid at
 Trinidado, having no other Port
 capable for them near Guiana. The

Second ship was commanded by my Vice-Admiral Captain *John Pennington*, of whom (to do him right) he is one of the sufficientest Gentlemen for the Sea that *England* hath. The third by Sir *Warham S. Light*, an exceeding valiant and worthy Gentleman. The fourth by Sir *John Fenn*. The fifth by Captain *Chidley* of *Devon*. With these five ships I daily attended their Armado of *Spain*, which had they set upon us, our force divided, the one half in *Orinoque*, an hundred and fifty miles from us, we had not only been torn in pieces, but all those in the River had also perished, being of no force at all for the Sea-fight; for we had resolved to have been burnt by their sides, had the Armado arrived: but belike, they staid for us at *Margarit*, by which they knew we must pass towards the *Indies*, for it pleased his Majesty to value us at so little, as to command me upon my Allegiance, to set down under my hand the Countrey, and the River by which I was to enter it; to set down the number of my men, and burthen of my ships, and what Ordnance every ship carryed, which being known to the *Spanish* Ambassadour, and by him
to

to the King of Spain, a dispatch was made, and letters sent from *Madrid*, before my departure out of the *Thames*; for his first letter sent by a Barque of Advice, was dated the 19. of March 1617. at *Madrid*, which letter I have here inclosed sent to your Honour, the rest I reserve, not knowing whether they may be intercepted or not. The second by the King, dated the second of May, sent also by a Colonel of *Diego de Polonioque*, Governor of *Guiana*, *Elderado*, and *Trinidad*. The third by the Bishop of *Porto Rico*, and delivered to *Polonioque* the 13. of July, at *Trinidad*. And the fourth was sent from the Farmer and Secretary of his Customs in the *Indies*. At the same time, by that of the Kings hand, sent by the Bishop, there was also a Commission for the speedy levying of three hundred souldiers, and ten pieces of Ordnance to be sent from *Porto Rico*, for the defence of *Guiana*, an hundred and fifty from *Nuevo Reino de Grando*, under the command of Captain *Anthony Musica*, and the other hundred and fifty from *Porto Rico*, to be conducted by Captain *Fran. Landio*.

Now Sir, if all that have tended to

the *Indies* since his Majesties time I new that the *Spaniards* have flayed alive all the poor men which they have taken, being but Merchant-men, what death and cruel torment shall we expect if they conquer us? Certainly they have hitherto failed grossly, being set out thence as we were, both for number, time, and place.

Lastly, to make an Apology for not working the Mine, (although I know his Majesty expects) whom I am to satisfie so much, as my self, having lost my Son, and my estate in the Enterprise, yet it is true, that the *Spaniards* took more care to defend the passage leading unto it, than they did the Town, which by the Kings instructions they might easily do, the Countreys being *Aspera & Nemorosa*.

But it is true, that when Captain *Kemish* found the River low, and that he could not approach the Banks in most places near the Myne by a mile, and where he found a descent, a volley of Muskets came from the Woods upon the Boat, and slew two Rowers, and hurt six others, and shot a valiant Gentleman of Caprain *Thornix*, of which wound he languisheth to
this

this day. He, to wit, *Kemi's*, following his own advice, thought that it was in vain to discover the Myne; for he gave me this for an excuse at his return, that the Companies of *English* in the Town of *S. Toone* were not able to defend it, against the daily and nightly assaults of the *Spaniards*, that the passages to the Mynes, were thick and unpassable Woods, and that the Myne being discovered, they had no men to work it, did not discover it at all: for it is true, the *Spaniards* having two gold Mynes near the Town, the one possessed by *Pedro Rodrigo de Paran*, the second by *Harmian Erotinio*, the third of silver, by Captain *Francisco*, for the want of *Negroes* to work them; for as the *Indians* cannot be constrained by a Law of *Charles the Fifth*, so the *Spaniards* will not, nor can endure the labour of those Mynes, whatsoever the *Bragadochio*, the *Spanish* Ambassadors faith. I shall prove under the Proprietors hand, by the Custom-Book, and the Kings Quinto, of which I recovered an Ingot or two: I shall also make it appear to any Prince or State that will undertake it, how easily those Mynes, and five or six more

of them may be possessed, and the most of them in those parts, which never have as yet been attempted by any, nor by any passage to them, nor ever discovered by the *English*, *French* or *Dutch*. But at *Kemish* his return from *Orinogue*, when I rejected his counsel and his course, and told him that he had undone me, and wounded my credit with the King past recovery, he flew himself: for I told him, that seeing my Son was slain, I cared not if I had lost an hundred more in opening of the Myne, for my credit had been saved: for I protest before God, had not Captain *Whitney* (to whom I gave more countenance than to all the Captains of my Fleet) run from me at the *Granados*, and carryed another ship with him of Captain *Wolleston's*, I would have left my body at *S. Thomas* by my Sons, or have brought with me out of that or other Mynes, so much Gold-ore, as should have satisfied the King. I propounded no vain thing; what shall become of me I know not, I am unpardoned in *England*, and my poor estate consumed, and whether any Prince will give me bread or no, I know not. I desire your Honour to hold me in your good opinion,

nion, to remember my service to my Lord of *Arundel* and *Pembroke*, to take some pity on my poor Wife, to whom I dare not write for renewing her sorrow for her Son; and beseech you to give a Copy of this to my Lord *Carew*: for to a broken mind, a sick body, and weak eyes, it is a torment to write many Letters. I have found many things of importance for discovering the state and weakness of the *Indies*, which, if I live, I shall hereafter impart unto your Honour, to whom I shall remain a faithful servant.

Walter Raleigh.

Sir Walter Raleigh's Letter sent to his Wife, Copied out of his own hand-writings.

I Was loath to write, because I know not how to comfort you; and God knows, I never knew what sorrow meant till now. All that I can say to you is, that you must obey the will and providence of God, and remember, that the Queens Majesty bare the loss of Prince Henry with a magnanimous

L 4

heart.

heart, and the Lady Harrington of her Son. Comfort your heart (dearest *Bess*) I shall sorrow for us both, I shall sorrow the less, because I have not long to sorrow, because not long to live. I refer you to Mr. Secretary *Winwood's* Letter, who will give you a copy of it, if you send for it, therein you shall know what hath passed; I have written that Letter, for my brains are broken, and it is a torment for me to write, and especially of misery. I have desired Mr. Secretary to give my Lord *Carew* a copy of his Letter. I have cleansed my ship of sick men, and sent them home: I hope God will send us somewhat before we return. You shall hear from me if I live, from the *New-found-land*, where I mean to make clean my ships and revictual; for I have Tobacco enough to pay for it. The Lord bless and comfort you, that you may bear patiently the death of your valiant Son.

*Feas 22. of March. From the Isle of
Christophers, yours, Walter Raleigh.*

Post-script.

I protest before the Majesty of
God, that as Sir *Francis Drake* and

and Sir John Hawkins dyed heart-broken when they failed of their enterprise, I could willingly do the like, did I not contend against sorrow for your sake, in hope to provide somewhat for you, and to comfort and relieve you. If I live to return, resolve your self that it is the care for you that hath strengthened my heart. It is true, that *Kemish* might have gone directly to the Myne, and meant it, but after my Sons death, he made them believe he knew not the way, and excused himself upon want of water in the River, and counterfeiting many impediments, left it unfound. When he came back, I told him he had undone me, and that my credit was lost for ever; he answered, That when my Son was lost, and that he left me so weak, that he resolved not to find me alive, he had no reason to enrich a company of Rascals, who after my Sons death made no account of him. He further told me that the *English* sent up into *Gibarra* could hardly defend the *Spanish* Town of *S. Thome* which they had taken, and therefore for them to pass through thick woods, it was impossible, and more impossible to have victual brought

L 5.

them.

them into the Mountains. And it is true that the Governour *Diego Pelonego*, and other four Captains being slain, whereof *was* slew one, *Plessington*, *was*'s servant, and *John of Moroccors*, one of his men, slew other two. I saw five of them slain in the entrance of the Town, the rest went off in a whole body, and took more care to defend the passages to their Mynes (of which they had three within a League of the Town, besides a Myne that was about five miles off) than they did of the Town itself. Yet *Kemish* at the first was resolved to go to the Myne; but when he came to the bank-side to Land, and had two of his men slain out-right from the bank, and six other hurt, and Captain *Thornix* shot in the head, of which wound, and the accident thereof, he hath pined away these twelve weeks.

Now when *Kemish* came back and gave me the former Reasons which moved him not to open the Myne, the one the death of my Son, a second the weakness of the *English*, and their impossibilities to work and to be victualled; a third that it were a folly to discover it for the *Spaniards*; and lastly, my weakness and being unpardon-
and

and that I rejected all these his Arguments, and told him, that I must leave him to himself to resolve it to the King and State, he shut up himself into his Cabbin, and shot himself with a pocket Pistol, which broke one of his ribs, and finding that he had not prevailed, he thrust a long Knife under his short ribs up to the handle and dyed. Thus much I have written to Mr. Secretary, to whose Letters I refer you to know the truth. I did after the sealing break open the Letter again, to let you know in brief the state of that business, which I pray you impart to my Lord of Northumberland, and *Silvanus Scotti.*

For the rest, there was never poor man so exposed to slaughter as I was; for being commanded upon mine Allegiance to set down not only the Countrey, but the very River by which I was to enter it, to name my Ships number, men, and my Artillery. This now was sent by the Spanish Ambassadour to his Master the King of Spain, the King wrote his Letters to all parts of the Indies, especially to the Governour Palomares of *Gabana, Aladrado, and Trinidad*, of which the first

first Letter bore date 18. of March
 1617. at Madrid; when I had not yet
 left the *Thames*; which Letter I have
 sent to Mr. Secretary. I have also other
 Letters of the Kings which I reserve,
 and one of the Councils. The King al-
 so sent a Commission to levy three
 hundred Souldiers out of his Garrisons
 of *Unie Regno de Granada & Portricho*;
 with ten pieces of brass Ordnance to
 entertain us; he also prepared an Ar-
 my by Sea to set upon us. It were
 too long to tell you how we were pre-
 served, if I live I shall make it known;
 my brains are broken, and I cannot
 write much, I live yet, and I told you
 why. *Witney* for whom I sold all my
 Plate at *Plymouth*; and to whom I
 gave more credit and countenance
 than to all the Captains of my Fleet;
 ran from me at the *Granadoes*; and
Woolenston with him, so as I have now
 but five Ships, and out of those I have
 sent some into my Fly-boat, a rabble
 of idle Rascals; which I know will not
 spare to wound me, but I care not. I
 am sure there is never a base slave in
 all the Fleet hath taken the pain and
 care that I have done, that have slept
 so little, and travelled so much, my
 friends

friends will not believe them, and for
the rest I care not; God in heaven bless
you and strengthen your heart.

Yours
Walter Raleigh.

Sir, Walter Raleigh's Letter to
Mr. Secretary Winwood.

SIR,

Since the death of Kemish, it is con-
fessed by the Serjeant Major, and
others of his inward friends, that he
told them that he could have brought
them unto the Myne within two
hours March from the Rivers side;
but because my Son was slain, my self
unpardoned, and not like to live, he
had no reason to open the Myne either
for the Spaniard or for the King; they
answered, that the King (though I were
not pardoned) had granted my heart
under the Great Seal. He replied that
the grant to me was to no man, non

Ens

not in the Law; and therefore of no
force; this discourse they had, which I
knew not of till after his death: but
when I was resolved to write unto your
Honour, he prayed me to joyn with him
in excusing his not going to the Myne,
I answered him I would not do it; but
if my self could satisfie the King and
State, that he had reason not to open
it, I should be glad of it: but for my
part, I must avow that he knew it, and
that he might with loss have done it;
other excuses I would not frame: he
told me that he would wait on me pre-
sently, and give me better satisfaction:
but I was no sooner come from him in-
to my Cabbin, but I heard a Pistol go
over my head, and sending to know
who shot it, word was brought me that
Kamib shot it out of his Cabbin win-
dow to cleanse it; his boy going into
his Cabbin, found him lying upon his
bed with much blood by him, and look-
ing in his face saw him dead; the Pistol
being but little, did but crack his rib,
but turning him over, found a long
knife in his body, all but the handle.
Sir I have sent into England with my
Cousin Herbert (a very valiant honest
Gentleman) divers unworthy persons,
good;

good for nothing neither by Sea nor
Land, and though it was at their own
suit, yet I know they will wrong me in
all that they can. I beseech your Ho-
nour, that the scorn of men may not be
believed of me, who have taken more
pains, and suffered more than the
meanest Rascal in the ship; these being
gone, I shall be able to keep the Sea
untill the end of *August*, with some
four reasonable good ships. Sir, where-
soever God shall permit me to arrive in
any part of *Europe*, I will not fail to let
your Honour know what we have done,
till then, and ever I rest

Your Honours

Servant

Walter Raleigh

Sir

Sir Walter Raleigh's

Letter to

King JAMES,

At his Return from

GUIANA.

*May it please your most excellent
Majesty.*

IF in my Journey outward bound, I had my men murthered at the Islands, and yet spared to take revenge, if I did discharge some *Spani^h* Barks taken without spoil, if I forbear all parts of the *Spani^h* Indies, wherein I might have taken twenty of their Downs on the sea coasts, and did only follow the enterprize I undertook for *Guiana*, where without any directions from me, a *Spani^h* Village was burnt, which was new set up within three miles of the Myne, By your Majesties favour, I find no reason why the *Spani^h* Ambassadour should complain of me. If it were lawful for the *Spaniards* to murther twenty six

Engli^h

English men, tying them back to back, and then cutting their throats, when they had traded with them a whole moneth, and came to them on the land without so much as one sword, and that it may not be lawfull to your Majesties subjects, being charged first by them; to repel force by force, we may justly say, O miserable *English*!

If *Parker* and *Mitbam* took *Campuch* and other places in the *Hondurats*, seated in the heart of the *Spanish* *Indies*; burnt Towns, and killed the *Spaniards*, and had nothing said unto them at their return, and my self forbore to look into the *Indies*, because I would not offend, I may as justly say, O miserable Sir *Walter Raleigh*!

If I have spent my poor estate, lost my son, suffered by sickness, and otherwise a world of miseries; if I have resisted with manifest hazard of my life, the Robberies and Spoils, with which my Companions would have made me rich; if when I was poor, I would have made my self rich, if when I had gotten my liberty, which all men and nature it self do much prize, I voluntarily lost it, if when I was sure of my life, I rendered it again, if I might elsewhere

where have sold my Ship and goods, and put five or six thousand pounds in my purse, and yet brought her into England, I beseech your Majesty to believe, that all this I have done, because it should not be said to your Majesty, that your Majesty had given liberty and trust to a man whose end was but the recovery of his liberty, and who had betrayed your Majesties trust.

My Minioniers told me, that if I returned from England I should be undone, but I believed in your Majesties goodness more than in all their arguments. Sure, I am the first that being free and able to enrich my self; yet hath embraced poverty and peril. And as sure I am, that my example shall make me the last; but your Majesties wisdom and goodness I have made my judges, who have ever been, and shall ever be,

Your Majesties

most humble Vassal

Walter Raleigh.

Sir

*Sir Walter Raleigh's Letter to his
Wife, after his Condemnation.*

YOU shall receive (my dear Wife) my Last words in these my last Lines; my love I send you, that you may keep when I am dead, and my counsel, that you may remember it when I am no more. I would not with my will present you sorrows (dear Best) let them go to the grave with me, and be buried in the dust. And seeing that it is not the will of God that I shall see you any more, bear my destruction patiently, and with an heart like your self.

First I send you all the thanks which my heart can conceive, or my words express for your many travels and cares for me, which though they have not taken effect as you wished, yet my debt to you is not the less; but pay it I never shall in this world.

Secondly, I beseech you, for the love you bare me living, that you do not hide your self many days, but by your travels seek to help my miserable Fortunes, and the Right of your poor Child,

Child, your mourning cannot avail me that am but dust.

Thirdly, you shall understand, that my Lands were conveyed (*hanc fide*) to my Child, the writings were drawn at Midsummer was twelve moneths, as divers can witness, and I trust my blood will quench their malice who desired my slaughter, that they will not seek also to kill you and yours with extream poverty. To what friend to direct you I know not, for all mine have left me in the true time of trial. Most sorry am I, that being thus surprised by death, I can leave you no better Estate, God hath prevented all my determinations, that great God which worketh all in all, and if you can live free from want, care for no more, for the rest is but a vanity: Love God, and begin betimes, in him shall you find true, everlasting, and endless comfort, when you have travelled and wearied your self with all sorts of worldly cogitations you shall sit down by sorrow in the end. Teach your son also to serve and fear God whilest he is young, that the fear of God may grow up in him; then will God be an Husband to you, and

and a Father to him, an Husband and a Father, that can never be taken from you.

Paylie oweth me a thousand pounds, and *Aryan* fix hundred ; in *Jernesey* also I have much owing me. (Dear wife) I beseech you, for my Soules sake, pay all poor men. When I am dead, no doubt you shall be much sought unto ; for the world thinks I was very rich ; have a care to the fair pretences of men, for no greater misery can befall you in this life, than to become a prey unto the world, and after to be despised. I speak (God knows) not to dissuade you from Marriage, for it will be best for you, both in respect of God and the world. As for me, I am no more yours, nor you mine, death hath cut us asunder, and God hath divided me from the world, and you from me. Remember your poor Child for his Fathers sake, who loved you in his happiest estate. I sued for my life, but (God knows) it was for you and yours that I desired, it : for know it, (my dear Wife) your Child is the Child of a true man, who in his own respect despiseth Death and his misshapen and ugly forms. I cannot write much,

much, (God knows) how hardly I steal
 this time when all sleep, and it is also
 time for me to separate my thoughts
 from the world. Beg my dead body,
 which living was denied you, and ei-
 ther lay it in *Sherburn* or in *Exeter*
 Church by my Father and Mother. I
 can say no more, Time and Death cal-
 leth me away. The everlasting God,
 powerful, infinite, and inscrutable God,
 Almighty, who is goodness it self, the
 true Light and Life, keep you and
 yours, and have mercy upon me, and
 forgive my Persecutors and false accu-
 sers, and send us to meet in his glorious
 Kingdom. My dear Wife farewell, Bless
 my Boy, Pray for me, and let my true
 God hold you both in his Arms.

Yours that was, but

now not my own

Walter Raleigh.

Sir

Sir Walter Raleigh's Letter to
Prince Henry, touching the
model of a Ship.

Most excellent Prince,

IF the Ship your Highness Intends to build, be bigger than the *Victory*, then her beams, which are laid overthwart from side to side will not serve again, and many other of her Timbers and other stuff, will not serve, whereas if she be a size less, the Timber of the old Ship will serve well to the building of a new.

If she be bigger she will be of less use, go very deep to Water, and of mighty charge, our Channels decaying every year, less nimble, less mannyable, and seldom to be used. *Grande Navio grande fatica faith the Spaniard.*

A Ship of six hundred Tuns, will carry as good Ordnance as a Ship of twelve hundred Tuns, and where the greater hath double her Ordnance, the less will turn her broad side twice, before the great Ship can winde once,

once, and so no advantage in that overplus of Guns. The Leher will go over clear where the greater shall stick and perish; the leher will come and go, leave or take, and is yare, whereas the greater is slow, unmanniably, and ever full of encumber.

In a well conditioned ship, these things are chiefly required.

1. That she be strong built.

2. Swift in sail.

3. Stout-sided.

4. That her Ports be so laid, as that she may carry out her Guns all weathers.

5. That she hull and trie well.

6. That she stay well, when boarding, or turning on a wind is required.

To make her strong, consisteth in the care and truth of the work-man; to make her swift, is to give her a large Run, or way forward, and so afterward, done by art and just proportion, and that in laying out of her bowes before, and quarters behind, the ship-wright be sure, that she neither sink nor hang into the water, but lye clear and above it, wherein Ship-wrights do often fail, and then is the speed in sailing utterly spoiled.

That

That she be stow-sided, the same is provided by a long bearing floar, and by sharing off from above waters to the lower edge of the Ports, which done, then will she carry out her Ordnance all weathers.

To make her to hull and to try well, which is called a good Sea Ship, there are two things principally to be regarded, the one that she have a good draught of water, the other that she be not overcharged: And this is seldom done in the Kings Ships, and therefore we are forced to lye, or try in them with our main Course and Mizzen, which with a deep keel and standing streak she would perform.

The extreame length of a Ship makes her unapt to stay, especially if she be floaty and want sharpness of way forward: And it is most true, that such over-long Ships, are fitter for the narrow Seas in Summer, than for the Ocean, or long voyages: and therefore an hundred foot by the Keel, and thirty five foot broad is a good proportion for a great Ship.

It is to be noted, that all Ships shro before, not having a long floar, will fall rough into the Sea from a billow, and take

254 Sir Walter Raleigh's
take in water over head and ears and
the same quality have all narrow quar-
tered Ships to sink after the tail. The
high Charging of Ships, is that that
brings many ill qualities, it makes them
extream Lee-ward, makes them sink
deeper into the Seas, makes them labour
fore in foul weather, and oft-times
overfet. Safety is more to be respected
than shew, or niceness for ease; in
sea-journeys both cannot well stand to-
gether, and therefore the most necessa-
ry is to be chosen.
Two Decks and an half is enough,
and no building at all above that, but
a low Masters Cabbin. Our Masters
and Marriners will say, that the Ships
will bear more well enough, and true
it is, if none but ordinary Marriners
were in them. But men of better sort,
accustomed to such a life, cannot so well
endure the rowling and rumbling from
side to side, where the Seas are never
so little grown, which comes by high
Charging. Besides those high Cabbin-
works aloft, are very dangerous in fight,
to tear men with their splinters.
Above all other things, have care
that the great Guns be four foot clear
above water when all lading is in, or
else

else these best pieces are idle at Sea:
 for if the Ports lye lower, and be open,
 it is dangerous; and by that default
 was a goodly Ship, and many gallant
 Gentlemen lost, in the dayes of Henry
 the Eighth, before the Ile of Wight, in
 a Ship called by the name of Mary.

Rose

My downy Glorie (Hopes true
 And thus I take my parting
 Blood must be my Bodice, only Balm
 No other Balm will there be given
 Will it my Soul like a quier Palmer,
 Travelleth towards the Land of Heaven
 Over the River Mountains

~~At the foot of the River Mountains~~
 There will I kiss the Bowl of Bliss
 And drink mine everlasting fill
 Upon every Milken hill.

My Soul will be a day before
 And yet it will think no more
 And yet it will think no more
 And yet it will think no more

M²

Sir

And thus I take my parting
 A thousand times I shall
 Where sweetest dwells
 Down up by Spring in Crystal fountains
 Then by that happy blessed day

~~And thus I take my parting~~
 And thus I take my parting
 And thus I take my parting
 And thus I take my parting

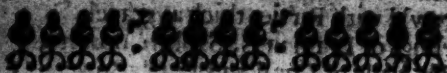
Sir Walter Raleigh's

PILGRIMAGE.

Give me my Scallop shell of quiet,
 My Staff of Faith to walk upon;
 My Scrip of Joy immortal Diet,
 My Bottle of Salvation.
 My Gown o' Glory (Hopes true gage)
 And thus I'll take my Pilgrimage.
 Blood must be my Bodies only Balmer,
 No other Balm will there be given
 Whil'st my Soul like a quiet Palmer,
 Travellerh towards the Land of Heaven
 Over the silver Mountains
 Where springs the Nectar Fountains,
 There will I kiss the Bowl of Bliss,
 And drink mine everlasting fill
 Upon every Milken hill.
 My Soul will be a-dry before,
 But after, it will thirst no more.
 I'll take them first, to quench my thirst,
 And taste of Nectars suckets,
 At those clear Wells
 Where sweetness dwells,
 Drawn up by Saints in Cryстал Buckets.
 Then by that happy blestful day,
 More peaceful Pilgrims I shall see,
 That have cast off their rags of clay,
 And walk appparelled fresh like me,
 And when our Bottles and all we
 Are fill'd with immortality,

Then

Then the blessed Parts wee'l travel;
Strow'd with Rubies thick as gravel,
Siefings of Diamonds, Sapphire flowers,
High walls of Coral, and Pearly Bowers.
From thence to Heavens bribeless Hall,
Where no corrupted voices brawl,
No Conscience molten into Gold,
No forg'd Accuser bought or sold,
No cause deferred, no vain spent journey,
For there *CHRIST* is the King's Attorney,
Who pleads for all without degrees,
And he hath Angels, but no Fees:
And when the twelv grand million Jury
Of our sins, with direful fury,
'Gainst our Souls black Verdicts give,
Christ pleads his Death, & then we live.
Be thou my Speaker (cainleſs Pledger,
Unblotted Lawyer, true Proceeder.)
Thou would'ſt Salvation even for Alms,
Notwith a bribed Lawyers Palms.
And this is mine eternal Plea
To him that made Heaven, Earth & Sea,
That ſince my fleſh muſt dye ſo ſoon,
And want a Head to dine next noon,
Juſt at the ſtroke, when my veins ſtart
and ſpread
Set on my Soul an everlaſting Head.
Then am I ready, like a Palmer fit (writ.
To tread thoſe bleſt Paths which before I
Of Death and Judgement, Heaven and Hell
Who oft doth think, muſt needs die wel.



Sir Walter Raleigh's

VERSES

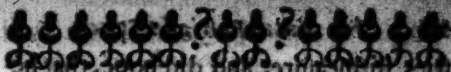
*Found in his Bible in the Gate-
house at Westminster.*

Even such is Time, w^h takes in trust
Our Youth, our Joys, & all we have,
And payes us nought but Age and Dust,
Which in the dark and silent Grave,
When we have wandred all our wayes,
Shuts up the story of our dayes:
And from which grave & earth & dust,
The Lord shall raise me up I trust.

Sir Walter Raleigh
On the Snuff of a Candle the
Night before he dyed.

Towards fear to dye I have courage bowe
Rather than live in snuff, will be put out.

Sir



Sir Walter Raleigh's

SPEECH

*Immediately before he was
Beheaded.*

UPon *Simon and Judas* day, the
Lieutenant of the Tower had
a Warrant to bring his Pri-
soner to the Kings Bench in *West-*
minster-Hall, where the Attorney
General demanded Execution, ac-
cording to the Judgement pronoun-
ced against him at *Winchester*, the
Lord Chief Justice caused the Indict-
ment, Verdict, and Judgement to be
read, and after asked him, what he
could say, Why he should not dye ac-
cording to the Law; his answer was,
That this fifteen years he had lived by
the meer mercy of the King, and did
now wonder how his Mercy was turned
into Justice, he not knowing any thing
wherein he had provoked his Maje-
sty.

M 4

flies displeasure; and did hope, that he was clear from that Judgement by the Kings Commission in making him General of the Voyage to *Guiana*, for (as he conceived) the words, *To his trusty and well beloved Subject*, &c. did in themselves imply a Pardon. But Master Attorney told him, these words were not sufficient for that purpose. Whereupon he desired the opinion of the Court, to which the Lord Chief Justice replied, it was no Pardon in Law.

Then began *Sir Walter Raleigh* to make a long description of the Events and Ends of his Voyage, but he was interrupted by the Chief Justice, who told him, that it was not for any Offence committed there, but for his first fact, that he was now called in question, and thereupon told him, That seeing he must prepare to dye, he would not add affliction to affliction, nor aggravate his fault, knowing him to be a man full of misery, but with the good Samaritan administer Oyl and Wine for the comfort of his distressed soul. You have been a General, and a great Commander, imitate therefore that noble Captain, who thrusling himself in.

into the midst of a Battell, cryed aloud, *Mors me expectat, & ego Mortem expectabo.* as you should not concern yourself to do, nor should you fear death, the one sheweth too much boldness, the other no less cowardize. So with some other few instructions the Court arose, and Sir Walter was committed into the hands of the Sheriff of Middlesex, who presently conveyed him to the Gatehouse in Westminster.

Upon Thursday morning this Courageous, although Committed Knight, was brought before the Parliaments House, where there was a Scaffold erected for his Beheading: yet it was doubted over night that he should be hanged, but it fell out otherwise. He had the sooner mounted the Scaffold, but with a cheerful Countenance, and undaunted Look, he saluted the Company. His attire was a wrought night-cap, a Ruff band, a hair-coloured Satin Doublet, with a black wrought Waste-coat under it, a pair of black cut Taffety Breeches, a pair of ash-coloured Silk Sockings, and a wrought black Velvet Night Gown; putting off his Hat, he directed his Speech to the Lords present, as followeth.

My honourable Lords, and the rest of my
 good friends that come to see me dye, Knowe
 that I much rejoyce that I have been pleased
 God to bring me from darkness to light, and
 in freeing me from the Tower, where in
 might have dyed in disgrace, by letting me
 live to come to this place, where though I
 lose my life, yet I shall clear some false accu-
 sations, unjustly laid to my charge, and leave
 behind me a testimony of a true heart, both
 to my King and Countrey. I am now in
 god and my conscience two things that are
 Two things which I have exceedingly
 Sir Walter Raleigh possessed and provoked his
 high is accused by his Majesty's indignation ad-
 ded of. Against me, viz. A Confede-
 rate with France, in a conspiracy, in combination with
 France, and a loyal and disloyal word
 of my Prince. For the first, which I justify
 some cause, though grounded upon a weak
 foundation, to suspect mine Inclination to
 the French Faction, for not long before
 my departure from England, the French
 Agent took occasion, passing by my house,
 to visit me, had some conference, during
 the time of his abode, only concerning my
 voyage, and nothing else. I take God to
 witness, that I was never in any
 Another suspicion is had of me, be-
 cause I did labour to make an escape from
 Ply-

Mymouth to France, I cannot deny, but
that willingly, when I heard a rumour,
That there was no hope of my Life upon my
return to London, I would have escaped
for the safeguard of my Life, and not for
any ill intent or conspiracy against the
State.

The like reason of suspicion arose, in that
I perswaded Sir Lewis Strenkly, my Guar-
dian, to flee with me from London to
France, but my answer to this is, as to the
other, That only for my safeguard, and
nought else, was my intent, as I shall an-
swer before the Almighty.

It is alledged, That I feigned my self
sick, and by art made my body full of bli-
sters when I was at Salisbury. True it is,
I did so; the reason was, because I hoped
thereby to defer my coming before the King
and Council, and so by delaying, might have
gained time to have got my Pardon. I have
an Example out of Scripture for my war-
rant, that in case of necessity, and for the
safeguard of his life, David feigned him-
self foolish and mad, yet it was not imputed
to him for sin.

Concerning the second Imputation laid
to my charge, that I should speak scanda-
lous and reproachful words of my Prince,
there is no witness against me but only

one, and he a Mimical French man, whom I entertained rather for his Jest, than his Judgement: this man to incroach himself into the favour of the Lords, and gaping after some great reward, hath falsely accused me of seditious speeches against his Majesty; against whom, if I did either speak or think a thought hurtful or prejudicial, the Lord blot me out of the Book of Life.

It is not a time to flatter or fear Princes, for I am a subject to none but Death, therefore have a charitable conceit of me. That I know to swear is an offence, to swear falsely at any time is a great sin, but to swear false before the presence of Almighty God, before whom I am forthwith to appear, were an offence unpardonable: therefore think me not now rashly or untruly to conform, or protest any thing.

As for other objections, in that I was brought perforce into England, that I carried sixteen thousand pounds in money out of England with me, more than I made known; that I should receive letters from the French King, and such like, with many Protestations he utterly denied.

FINIS.

THE
PREROGATIVE
OF
PARLIAMENTS
IN
ENGLAND.

Proved.
In a Dialogue between a
Councillour of State, and
a Justice of Peace.

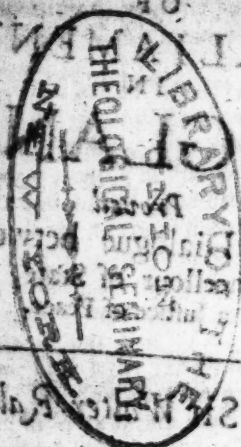
By Sir Walter Raleigh.

Dedicated to the KING's
most excellent Majesty.

Published at Middleburge. 1628.
LONDON,

Printed for Henry Mortlock, at
the Phoenix in St. Paul's Church-
yard, and at the White Hart in
Westminster-Hall. 1675.

THE
 PRIVILEGE
 OF
 PARLIAMENTS
 IN
 ENGLAND.



In a Bill of Rights
 and

By Sir William Burdett
 Raleigh.

Dedicated to the KING
 most excellent Majesty.

LONDON.

Printed for Henry Matthews at
 the Press in St. Pauls Church-
 Yard, and at the White Hart in
 Fleet-Street.



TO THE
KING

Most gracious Sovereign,

Those that are supprest
and helpless are com-
monly silent, wishing
that the common ill in
all sort might be with their parti-
cular misfortunes: which dispositi-
on, as it is uncharitable in all men,
so it would be in me were dogg like
than man like to bite the stone that
struck me. I can not be harrowed
out of my Sovereign misin-
formed, seeing their arms and
hands that flung it, are most of them
already rotten. For I must confesse

indeed that they are debts, and not
discontentment; that your Majesty
hath laid upon me; the debts and
obligation of a friendless adversity,
far more payable in all kinds,
than those of the prosperous: All
which, nor the least of them, though
I cannot discharge, I may yet en-
deavour it. And notwithstanding
my restraint hath retrenched all
waies, as well as the waies of labour
and will, as of all other employment,
yet hath it left with me my cogita-
tions, than which I have nothing
else to offer on the Altar of my Love.

Of those (most gracious Seve-
raign) I have used some part in the
following dispute, between a Coun-
sellour of Estate, and a Justice of
Peace, the one dissuading, the
other perswading the Calling of a
Parliament. In all which, since
the Norman Conquest (as the least
so many, as Historians have gather-
ed) I have in some things in the
following

following Dialogue presented your Majesty with the comments and successes.

Some things there are and those of the greatest, which because they ought to be resolved on, I thought fit to range them in the front of the rest, to the end your Majesty may be pleased to examine your own great and Princely heart of their acceptance, or refusal.

The first is, that supposition, that your Majesties Subjects give nothing but with adjunction of their own interest, interlacing in one and the same act your Majesties relief, their own liberties: not that your Majesties piety was ever suspected, but because the best Princes are ever the least jealous, your Majesties judging others by your self, who have abused your Majesties trust. The fear'd continuance of the like abuse may persuade the provision. But this caution

caution, however it seemeth at first
sight, your Majesty shall perceive
by many examples following, but
frivolous. The bonds of Subjects
to their Kings should alwayes be
wrought out of love, the bonds of
Kings unto Subjects true with Com-
punction. This it is (most renowned So-
veraign) that this traffick of assu-
rances hath been often urged, of
which, if the Conditions had been
easie, our Kings have so easily kept
them, if hard and prejudicial, ei-
ther to their honours or estates, the
Creditors have been paid their
debts with their own presumption.
For all binding of a King by
Law upon the advantage of his
necessity, makes the breach it self
lawful in a King, His Charters
and all other instruments being no
other than the surviving witnesses
of unconstrained Will. Principes
non subijcti nisi sua voluntate
libera,

libert, mere motu & certa scientia: Necessary words in all the grants of a King witnessing that the same grants were given freely and knowingly.

The second resolution will rest in your Majesty, leaving the new impositions, all Monopolies, and other grievances of the people to the consideration of the House, Provided, that your Majesties revenue be not abated, which if your Majesty shall refuse, it is thought that the disputes will last long, and the issues will be doubtful: And on the contrary if your Majesty vouchsafe it, it may perchance be stiled a yielding, which seemeth by the sound to brave the Regalty.

But (most excellent Prince) what other is it to the ears of the Wise, but as the sound of a trumpet, having blasted forth a false Alarm, becomes but common noise? Shall the head yield to the feet? certainly

ly it ought, when they are grieved, for wisdom will rather regard the commodity, than object the disgrace, seeing if the feet lye in fetters, the head cannot be freed, and where the feet feel but their own pains, the head doth not only suffer by participation, but within by consideration of the evil.

Certainly the point of honour well weighed hath nothing in it to even the ballance, for by your Majesties favour, your Majesty doth not yield either to any person or to any power, but to dispute only, in which the Proposition and Minor prove nothing without a conclusion, which no other person or power can make, but a Majesty: yea this in Henry the third his time was called a wisdom incomparable. For the King raised again, recovered his authority: For, being in that extremity as he was driven with the Queen and his Children,

Children, Cum Abbatibus & Pri-
oribus satis humilibus hospitia
querere & prandia : For the rest,
may it please your Majesty to con-
sider that there can nothing befall
your Majesty in matters of affairs
more unfortunately, than the Com-
mons of Parliament with ill suc-
cess : A dishonour so perswasive
and adventurous as it will not only
find arguments ; but it will take
the leading of all enemies that shall
offer themselves against your Ma-
jesties estate.

Le Tabourin de la paurete ne
faict point de breuct : of which
dangerous disease in Princes, the
remedy doth chiefly consist in the
love of the people, which how it
may be had and held, no man knows
better than your Majesty ; how to
lose it, all men know, and know
that it is lost by nothing more than
by the defence of others in wrong
doing. The only motives of mis-
changes

chances that ever came to Kings of
 this Land since the Conquest.
 It is only love (most renowned
 Sovereign) must prepare the way
 for your Majesties following de-
 sires. It is love which obeys, which
 suffers, which gives, which sticks
 at nothing; which Love, as well
 of your Majesties people, as the love
 of God to your Majesty, that it
 may always hold, shall be the con-
 stinual prayers of your Majesties
 most humble vassal,

on an unpa...
 said point...
 change...
 the...
Walter Raleigh.
 love of the people, which...
 may be had and held...
 better than your Majesty; how to
 and how...
 that it is left by nothing...
 by the absence of others in...
 The only...

THE
PREROGATIVE
OF
PARLIAMENTS

Proved
In a Dialogue between a
Counsellour of State, and
a Justice of Peace.

Counsellour.
Now Sir, what think you
of M. S. Johns tryal in
Star Chamber? I know
that the bruite ran that
he was hardly dealt with-
all, because he was imprisoned in the
Tower, seeing his dissuasion from
granting a Benevolence to the King
was warranted by the Law.

Justice.

Justice. Surely Sir it was made manifest at the hearing that M. St. John was rather in love with his own letter; he confessed he had seen your Lordships Letter, before he wrote his to the Major of Marlborough, and in your Lordships Letter, there was not a word whereto the Statutes by Mr. St. John alledged, had reference; for those Statutes did condemn the gathering of money from the subject, under title of a free gift; whereas a fifth, a sixth, a tenth, &c. was set down and required. But my good Lord, though divers Shires have given to his Majesty, some more, some less, what is this to the Kings debt?

Couns. We know it well enough, but we have many other projects.

Just. It is true my good Lord: but your Lordship will find, that when by these you have drawn many petty sums from the subjects, and those sometimes spent as fast as they are gathered, his Majesty being nothing enabled thereby, when you shall be forced to demand your great aide, the Countrey will excuse it self in regard of their former payments.

Couns. What mean you by the great aide?

Just.

Just. I mean the aid of Parliament.

Couns. By Parliament, I would faine know the man that durst perswade the King unto it, for if it should succeed ill, in what case were he?

Just. You say well for your self my Lord, and perchance you that are lovers of your selves (under pardon) do follow the advice of the late Duke of *Alva*, who was ever opposite to all resolutions in business of importance; for if the things enterprised succeeded well, the advice never came in question; if ill, (whereto great undertakings are commonly subject) he then made his advantage by remembering his Countrey Council: But my good Lord, these reserved Politicians are not the best servantes, for he that is bound to adventure his life for his Master, is also bound to adventure his advice, *Keep not back Counsel* (saith *Ecclesiasticus*) *when it may do good.*

Couns. But Sir, I speak it not in other respect than I think it dangerous for the King to assemble the three Estates, for thereby have our former Kings alwayes lost somewhat of their prerogatives. And because that you shall not think that I speak it at random,

dom; I will begin with elder times, wherein the first contention began betwixt the Kings of this land and their subjects in Parliament.

Just. Your Lordship shall do me a singular favour.

Counf. You know that the Kings of England had no formal Parliament till about the 18. year of Henry the first, for in his 17. year for the marriage of his Daughter, the King raised a tax upon every hide of land by the advice of his privy Council alone. But you may remember how the subjects soon after the establishment of this Parliament began to stand upon terms with the King, and drew from him by strong hand and the sword the great Charter.

Just. Your Lordship sayes well, they drew from the King the great charter by the sword, and hereof the Parliament cannot be accused, but the Lords.

Counf. You say well, but it was after the establishment of the Parliament, and by colour of it, that they had so great daring, for before that time they could not endure to hear of St. Edwards laws, but resisting the confirmation in all they could, although by

by those laws the Subjects of this Island were no less free than any of all Europe.

Just. My good Lord, the reason is manifest; for while the Normans and others of the French that followed the Conquerour made spoil of the English, they would not endure that any thing but the will of the Conquerour should stand for Law: but after a descent or two, when themselves were become English, and found themselves beaten with their own rods, they then began to favour the difference between subjection and slavery, and insist upon the Law, *Memento Teum*, and to be able to say unto themselves, *hoc fac & viues*: yea, that the conquering English in Ireland did the like, your Lordship knows it better than I.

Couns. I think your guess aright: And to the end the subject may know that being a Faithful servant to his Prince, he might enjoy his own life, and paying to his Prince what he owes to a Sovereign, the remainder was his own to dispose, Henry the first to content his vassals, gave them the great Charter, and the Charter of Forrests.

Just. What reason then had King

John to deny the confirmation.

Consf. He did not, but he on the contrary confirmed both the *Charters* with additions, and required the Pope whom he had then made his superiour to strengthen him with a *golden Bull*.

Just. But your honour knows, that it was not long, that he repented himself.

Consf. It is true, and he had reason so to do, for the Barons refused to follow him into *France*, as they ought to have done, and to say true, this *great Charter* upon which you insist so much, was not originally granted Regally and freely; for *Henry* the first did usurp the Kingdom, and therefore the better to assure himself against *Robert* his eldest Brother, he flattered the Nobility and people with those *charters*. Yea, King *John* that confirmed them, had the like respect: for *Arthur* Duke of *Britain* was the undoubted heir of the Crown, upon whom *John* usurped. And so to conclude, these *Charters* had their original from Kings *de facto*, but not *de jure*.

Just. But King *John* confirmed the *Charter* after the death of his Nephew *Arthur*, when he was then *Rex de jure* also.

Consf.

Couns. It is true, for he durst do no other, standing accursed, where by few or none obeyed him; for his Nobility refused to follow him into *Scotland*, and he had so grieved the people by pulling down all the Park pales before harvest, to the end his Deer might spoil the corn; And by seizing the temporalities of so many Bishopricks into his hands, and chiefly for practising the death of the Duke of *Britain* his Nephew, as also having lost *Normandy* to the *French*, so as the hearts of all men were turned from him.

Just. Nay, by your favour my Lord, King *John* restored King *Edwards* Laws after his absolution, and wrote his letters in the fiftenth of his reign to all Sheriffs, countermanding all former oppressions, yea, this he did, notwithstanding the Lords refused to follow him into *France*.

Couns. Pardon me, he did not restore King *Edwards* Laws then, nor yet confirmed the Charters, but he promised upon his absolution to do both: but after his return out of *France* in his sixteenth year he denyed it, because without such a promise he had not obtained restitution, his pro-

mise being constrained, and not voluntary.

Just. But what think you, was he not bound in honour to perform it?

Couns. Certainly no, for it was determined, in the case of King *Francis* the first of *France*, that all promises by him made, whilst he was in the hands of *Charles* the fifth his enemy, were void, by reason the Judge of honour, which tells us he durst do no other.

Just. But King *John* was not in prison.

Couns. Yet for all that, restraint is imprisonment; yea, fear it self is imprisonment, and the King was subject to both: I know there is nothing more Kingly in a King than the performance of his word; but yet of a word freely and voluntarily given. Neither was the Charter of *Henry* the first so published, that all men might plead it for their advantage, but a Charter was left (in deposito) in the hands of the Archbishop of *Canterbury* for the time, and so to his successors. *Stephen Langthon*, who was ever a Traytor to the King, produced this Charter, and shewed it to the Barons, there-

thereby encouraging them to make war against the King. Neither was it the old Charter simply the Barons sought to have confirmed, but they presented unto the King other articles and orders, tending to the alteration of the whole Common-wealth, which when the King refused to sign, the Barons presently put themselves into the field, and in rebellious and outrageous fashion sent the King word, except he confirmed them, they would not desist from making war against him, till he had satisfied them therein. And in conclusion, the King being betrayed of all his Nobility, in effect was forced to grant the Charter of *Magna Charta*, and *charta de Forestis*, at such time as he was environed with an Army in the Meadows of *Staines*, which Charters being procured by force, Pope *Innocent* afterward disavowed, and threatened to curse the Barons if they submitted not themselves as they ought to their Sovereign Lord, which when the Lords refused to obey, the King entertained an army of strangers for his own defence, where-with having mastered and beaten the Barons, they called in *Peter* of France (a most unnatural resolution) to be

their King; Neither was *Magna Charta* a Law in the nineteenth of Hen. 2. but simply a charter which he confirmed in the twenty first of his reign, and made it a Law in the 25. according to *Littletons* opinion. Thus much for the beginning of the *Great Charter*, which had first an obscure birth from usurpation, and was secondly, fostered and shewed to the world by rebellion.

Just. I cannot deny, but that all your Lordship hath said is true; but seeing the *Charters* were afterwards so many times confirmed by Parliament, and made Laws, and that there is nothing in them unequal or prejudicial to the King, doth not your Honour think it reason they should be observed?

Couns. Yes, and observed they are in all that the state of a King can permit, for no man is destroyed but by the Laws of the Land, no man disfeized of his inheritance, but by the Laws of the Land, imprisoned they are by the prerogative where the King hath cause to suspect their loyalty: for were it otherwise, the King should never come to the knowledge of any Conspiracy or Treason against his Person or State, and being imprisoned, yet doth

doth not any man suffer death but by the Law of the Land.

Just. But may it please your Lordship, were not *Cornemallis*, *Sharpe*, and *Hoskins* imprisoned, being no suspicion of Treason there?

Counf. They were; but it cost them nothing.

Just. And what got the King by it? for in the conclusion (besides the murmur of the people) *Cornemallis*, *Sharpe* and *Hoskins* having greatly overshot themselves, and repented them, a fine of 5 or 600 l. was laid on his Majesty for their offences, for so much their dyet cost his Majesty.

Counf. I know who gave the advice; sure I am that it was none of mine: But thus I say, if you consult your memory; you shall find that those Kings which did in their own times confirm the *Magna Charta*, did not only imprison, but they caused of their Nobility and others to be slain without hearing or tryal.

Just. My good Lord; if you will give me leave to speak freely, I say, that they are not well advised that perswade the King not to admit the *Magna Charta* with the former reservations: For as the King can never lose a

a farthing by it, as I shall prove anon : So except *England* were as *Naples* is, and kept by Garrisons of another Nation, it is impossible for a King of *England* to greaten and enrich himself by any way so assuredly, as by the love of his people : For by one rebellion the King hath more loss than by a hundred years observance of *Magna Charta*. For therein have our Kings been forced to compound with Rogues and Rebels, and to pardon them, yea, the state of the King, the Monarchy, the Nobility have been endangered by them.

Counf. Well Sir, let that pass, why should not our Kings raise money as the Kings of *France* do by their Letters and Edicts only? for since the time of *Lewis* the eleventh, of whom it is said, that he freed the *French* Kings of their wardship; the *French* Kings have seldome assembled the States for any contribution.

Just. I will tell you why: the strength of *England* doth consist of the people and Ycomantry, the Pefants of *France* have no courage nor arms: In *France* every Village and Burrough hath a Castle, which the *French* call *Chasteau-Villain*, every good City hath
a good

a good Cittadel, the King hath the Regiments of his Guards and his men at Arms alwayes in pay; yea, the Nobility of *France*, in whom the strength of *France* consists, do alwayes assist the King in those levies; because themselves being free, they made the same levies upon their Tenants. But my Lord, if you mark it, *France* was never free in effect from Civil Wars, and lately it was endangered either to be conquered by the *Spaniard*, or to be cantonized by the rebellious *French* themselves, since that freedom of Wardship. But my good Lord, to leave this digression, that wherein I would willingly satisfie your Lordship, is, that the Kings of *England* have never received loss by Parliament, or prejudice.

Cons. No Sir! you shall find that the subjects in Parliament have decreed great things to the disadvantage and dishonour of our Kings in former times.

Just. My good Lord, to avoid confusion, I will make a short repetition of them all, and then your Lordship may object where you see cause; And I doubt not but to give your Lordship satisfaction. In the sixth year of
Henry

Henry the third there was no dispute, the house gave the King two shillings of every plough'd land within *England*, and in the end of the same year he had *eschuage* payed him (to wit) for every Knights fee two marks in silver. In the fifth year of that King, the Lords demanded the confirmation of the *Great Charter* which the Kings Council for that time present excused, alledging that those priviledges, were extorted by force during the Kings Minority, and yet the King was pleased to send forth his Writ to the Sheriffs of every Countie, requiring them to certifie what those liberties were, and how used, and in exchange of the Lords demand, because they pressed him so violently, the King required all the Castles and places which the Lords held of his, and had held in time of his Father, with those Mannors and Lordships which they had heretofore wrested from the Crown, which at that time (the King being provided of forces) they durst not deny. In the fourteenth year he had the fifteenth peny of all goods given him, upon condition to confirm the *Great Charter*: For by reason of the wars in *France*, and the loss of

of *Rebell*, he was then enforced to consent to the Lords in all they demanded. In the tenth of his reign he fined the City of *London* at 50000. marks, because they had received *Lords* of *France*. In the eleventh year in the Parliament at *Oxford*, he revoked the great Charter, being granted when he was under age, and governed by the Earl of *Pembroke* and the Bishop of *Winchester*. In this eleventh year the Earls of *Cornwall* and *Chester*, *Marshall*, *Edward* Earl of *Pembroke*, *Gilbert* Earl of *Glocester*, *Warren*, *Hereford*, *Ferrars* and *Warwick*, and others rebelled against the King, and constrained him to yield unto them in what they demanded for their particular interest, which rebellion being appeased, he sailed into *France*, and in his fifteenth year he had a fifteenth of the temporality, and a dism and a half of the spirituality, and withal escuage of every Knights fee.

Couns. But what say you to the Parliament of *Westminster* in the 16th of the King, where notwithstanding the wars of *France* and his great charge in repulsing the *welsh* rebels, he was flatly denied the Subsidy demanded.

Just. I confess my Lord, that the

the house excused themselves by reason of their poverty, and the Lords taking of Arras; in the next year it was manifest that the house was practised against the King: And was it not so, my good Lord, think you in our two last Parliaments, for in the first even those whom his Majesty trusted most, betrayed him in the union, and in the second there were other of the great ones ran counter. But your Lordship spake of dangers of Parliaments, in this, my Lord, there was a denial, but there was no danger at all: but to return where I left, what got the Lords by practising the house at that time? I say, that those that brake this Staff upon the King, were over-turned with the counterbuff, for he resumed all those lands which he had given in his minority: he called all his exacting Officers to account, he found them all faulty, he examined the corruption of other Magistrates, and from all these he drew sufficient money to satisfy his present necessity; whereby he not only spared his people, but highly contented them with an act of so great Justice: Yea, Hubert Earl of Kent, the Chief Justice whom he had most trusted, and most advanced,

ced, was found as false to the King, as any one of the rest. And for conclusion, in the end of that year at the assembly of the States at Lambeth, the King had the fortieth part of every mans goods given him freely toward his debts : for the people, who the same year had refused to give the King any thing, when they saw he had squeezed those sponges of the Commonwealth, they willingly yielded to give him satisfaction.

Couns. But I pray you, what became of this *Hubert*, whom the King had favoured above all men, betraying his Majesty as he did?

Just. There were many that perswaded the King to put him to death, but he could not be drawn to consent; but the King seized upon his estate which was great; yet in the end he left him a sufficient portion, and gave him his life, because he had done great service in former times : For his Majesty, though he took advantage of his vice; yet he forgot not to have consideration of his virtue. And upon this occasion it was that the King, betrayed by those whom he most trusted, entertained strangers, and gave them their offices and the charge of
his

his Castles and strong places in England.

Couns. But the drawing in of those strangers was the cause that *Marshall Earl of Pembroke* moved war against the King.

Just. It is true, my good Lord; but he was soon after slain in Ireland, and his whole masculine race, ten years extinguished, though there were five Sons of them, and *Marshall* being dead, who was the mover and ring-leader of that war, the King pardoned the rest of the Lords that had assisted *Marshall*.

Couns. What reason had the King so to do?

Just. Because he was perswaded, that they loved his person, and only hated those corrupt Counsellors, that then bare the greatest sway under him, as also because they were the best men of war he had, whom if he had destroyed, having war with the French, he had wanted Commanders to have served him.

Couns. But what reason had the Lords to take arms?

Just. Because the King entertained the *Poictouins*, were not they the Kings Vassals also? Should the Spaniards

ards rebel, because the Spanish King trusts to the Neapolitans, Portugues, Millanoes, and other Nations his Vassals, seeing those that are governed by the Vice-royes and Deputies, are in policy to be well entertained and to be employed, who would otherwise devise how to free themselves; whereas, being trusted and imployed by their Prince, they entertain themselves with the hopes that other the Kings Vassals do: if the King had called in the Spaniards, or other Nations, not his Subjects, the Nobility of England had reason of grief.

Couns. But what people did ever serve the King of England more faithfully than the Gascoignes did, even to the last of the Conquest of that Dutchy.

Just. Your Lordship sayes well, and I am of that opinion, that if it had pleased the Queen of England to have drawn some of the chief of the Irish Nobility into England, and by exchange have made them good free-holders in England, she had saved above two millions of pounds, which were consumed in times of those Rebellions. For what held the great Gascoigne firm to the Crown

Crown of *England* (of whom the Duke of *Espenon* married the Inheritrix) but his Earldom of *Kendall* in *England*, whereof the Duke of *Espenon* (in right of his Wife) bears the Title to this day? And to the same end I take it, hath *James* our Sovereign Lord given Lands to divers of the Nobility of *Scotland*. And if I were worthy to advise your Lordship, I should think, that your Lordship should do the King great service, to put him in mind to prohibit all the *Scottish* Nation to alienate and sell away their inheritance here; for they selling, they not only give cause to the *English* to complain, that the Treasure of *England* is transported into *Scotland*, but his Majesty is thereby also frustrated of making both Nations one, and of assuring the service and obedience of the *Scots* in future.

Counf. You say well, for though those of *Scotland* that are advanced and enriched by the Kings Majestie will, no doubt, serve him faithfully, yet how their heirs and successors, having no inheritance to lose in *England*, may be seduced, is uncertain. But let us go on with our Parliament. And what say you to the denyal, in the
twenty

twenty sixth year of his reign, even when the King was invited to come into *France* by the Earl of *March*, who had married his Mother, and who promised to assist the King in the conquest of many places lost?

Just. It is true my good Lord, that a subsidie was then denyed, and the reasons are delivered in *English Histories*, and indeed the King not long before had spent much Treasure in aiding the Duke of *Brittain* to no purpose; for he drew over the King, but to draw on good conditions for himself, as the Earl of *March* his Father-in-law now did: As the *English* Barons did invite *Lewis* of *France* not long before, as in elder times all the Kings and States had done, and in late years the Leaguers of *France* entertained the *Spaniards*, and the *French* Protestants and *Netherlands*, Queen *Elizabeth*, not with any purpose to greatch those that aid them, but to purchase to themselves an advantageous peace. But what say the Histories to this denial? They say, with a world of payments, there mentioned, that the King had drawn the Nobility dry. And besides, that whereas not long before great summs of money

ney where given, and the same appointed to be kept in four Castles, and not to be expended but by the advice of the Peers; it was believed, that the same Treasure was yet unspent.

Counſ. Good Sir, you have said enough; judge you whether it were not a dishonour to the King to be so tyed, as not to expend his Treasure but by other mens advice, as it were by their licence.

Just. Surely, my Lord, the King was well advised to take the money upon any occasion, and they were fools that propounded the restraint; for it doth not appear, that the King took any great heed to those over-seers: *Kings are bound by their piety and by no other obligation.* In Queen Maries time, when it was thought that she was with Child, it was propounded in Parliament, that the rule of the Realm should be given to King Philip, during the minority of the hoped Prince or Princess; and the King offered his assurance in great summs of money, to relinquish the Government at such time as the Prince or Princess should be of age: At which motion, when all else were silent in the House,

Lord

Lord Dacres (who was none of the wisest) asked who shall sue the Kings Bonds? which ended the dispute; (for what other Bond is between a King and his Vassals, than the Bond of the Kings Faith?) But, my good Lord, the King, notwithstanding the denial at that time, was with gifts from particular persons, and otherwise, supplied for proceeding of his journey for that time into *France*; he took with him thirty Casks filled with Silver and Coyn, which was a great Treasure in those dayes. And lastly, notwithstanding the first denial, in the Kings absence he had Escuage granted him (to wit) 20 s. of every Knights Fee.

Counf. What say you then to the twenty eighth year of that King, in which when the King demanded relief, the States would not consent, except the same former order had been taken for the appointing of four over-seers for the treasure: as also that the Lord Chief Justice and the Lord Chancellour should be chosen by the States, with some Barons of the Exchequer and other Officers?

Just. My good Lord, admit the King had yielded to their demands, then

then whatsoever had been ordained by these Magistrates to the dislike of the Common-wealth, the people had been without remedy, whereas while the King made them, they had their appeal and other remedies. But those demands vanished, and in the end the King had escuage given him, without any of their conditions. It is an excellent virtue in a King to have patience, and to give way to the fury of mens passions. The Whale when he is stricken by the fisherman, grows into that fury, that he cannot be resisted: but will overthrow all the Ships and Barks that come into his way; but when he hath tumbled a while, he is drawn to the shore with a twin'd thred.

Couns. What say you then to the Parliament in the twenty ninth of that King?

Just. I say, that the Commons being unable to pay, the King relieves himself upon the richer sort: and so it likewise happened in the 33. of that King, in which he was relieved chiefly by the City of London. But, my good Lord, in the Parliament in London in the thirty eighth year, he had given him the tenth of all the revenues of the Church.

Church for three years, and three marks of every Knights Fee throughout the Kingdom, upon his promise and oath upon the observing of *Magna Charta*, but in the end of the same year, the King being then in *France*, he was denyed the aids which he required. What is this to the danger of a Parliament? especially at this time they had reason to refuse, they had given so great a sum in the beginning of the same year. And again, because it was known that the King had but pretended war with the King of *Castile*, with whom he had secretly contracted an alliance, and concluded a Marriage betwixt his Son *Edward* and the Lady *Elenor*. These false fires do but fright Children, and it commonly falls out, that when the cause given is known to be false, the necessity pretended is thought to be feigned. Royal dealing hath evermore Royal success: and as the King was denyed in the eight and thirtieth year, so was he denyed in the nine and thirtieth year, because the Nobility and the people saw it plainly, that the King was abused by the Pope, who as well in despite to *Manfred* bastard Son to the Emperour *Frederick* the second, as to
COZEN

couzen the King, and to waste him, would needs bestow on the King the Kingdom of *Sicily*; to recover which, the King sent all the Treasure he could borrow or scrape to the Pope, and withal gave him letters of credence, for to take up what he could in *Italy*, the King binding himself for the payment. Now, my good Lord, the wisdom of Princes is seen in nothing more than in their enterprises. So how displeasing it was to the State of *England* to consume the Treasure of the Land, and in the conquest of *Sicily* so far off, and otherwise, for that the *English* had lost *Normandy* under their noses, and so many goodly parts of *France*, of their own proper inheritances: the reason of the denial is as well to be considered as the denial.

Couns. Was not the King also denied a Subsidy in the forty first of his reign?

Just. No, my Lord: for although the King required money as before, for the impossible conquest of *Sicily*, yet the House offered to give 52000. marks, which whether he refused or accepted, is uncertain: and whilst the King dreamed of *Sicily*, the *Welsh* invaded

invaded and spoiled the borders of England; for in the Parliament of London, when the King urged the House for the prosecuting the conquest of *Sicily*, the Lords utterly disliking the attempt, urged the prosecuting of the *welshmen*; which Parliament being prorogued did again assemble at *Oxford*; and was called the mad Parliament, which was no other than an assembly of Rebels; for the Royal assent of the King which gives life to all Laws, formed by the three Estates, was not a Royal assent, which both the King and the Prince were constrained to yield to the Lords. A constrained consent is the consent of a Captive and not of a King, and therefore there was nothing done there either legally or royally. For if it be not properly a Parliament, where the subject is not free, certainly it can be none where the King is bound, for all Kingly rule was taken from the King, and twelve Peers appointed; and as some Writers have it twenty four Peers, to govern the Realm, and therefore the Assembly made by *Jack Straw* and other Rebels may as well be called a Parliament as that of *Oxford*. *Principis nomen habere, non est esse princeps,* for

for thereby was the King driven not only to compound all quarrels with the French, but to have means to be revenged on the rebell Lords: but he quitted his right to Normandy, Anjou and Aquitaine.

Counf. But Sir, what needed this extremity, seeing the Lords required but the confirmation of the former Charter, which was not prejudicial to the King to grant?

Just. Yes my good Lord, but they insulted upon the King, and would not suffer him to enter into his own Castles, they put down the Purveyor of the meat for the maintenance of his house: as if the King had been a bankrupt, and gave order that without ready money he should not take up a Chicken. And though there is nothing against the royalty of a King in these Charters (the Kings of England being Kings of freemen, and not of slaves) yet it is so contrary to the nature of a King to be forced even to those things which may be to his advantage, as the King had some reason to seek the dispensation of his oath from the Pope, and to draw in strangers for his own defence: yea *jura salvo Corona nostra* is intended inclusively

elufively in all oaths and promifes extracted from a Sovereign.

Couns. But you cannot be ignorant how dangerous a thing it is to call in other Nations, both for the ſpoil they make, as alſo, becauſe they have often held the poſſeſſion of the beſt places with which they have been truſted.

Juſt. It is true my good Lord, that there is nothing ſo dangerous for a King as to be conſtrained and held as a priſoner to his Vaſſals, for by that, *Edward the ſecond*, and *Richard the ſecond* loſt their Kingdoms and their lives. And for calling in of ſtrangers, was not King *Edward the ſixth* driven to call in ſtrangers againſt the Rebels in *Norfolk*, *Cornwall*, *Oxfordſhire*, and elſewhere? Have not the Kings of *Scotland* been oftentimes conſtrained to entertain ſtrangers againſt the Kings of *England*? And the King of *England* at this time, had he not been divers times aſſiſted by the Kings of *Scotland*, had been endangered to have been expelled for ever.

Couns. But yet you know thoſe Kings were depoſed by Parliament.

Juſt. Yea my good Lord, being Priſoners, being out of poſſeſſion, and being

being in their hands that were Princes of the blood and pretenders. It is an old Countrey Proverb, (that *Might overcomes Right*) a weak title that wears a strong sword, commonly prevails against a strong title that wears but a weak one, otherwise *Philip* the second had never been Duke of *Portugall*, nor Duke of *Millain*, nor King of *Naples* and *Sicily*. But good Lord, *Errores non sunt trahendi in exemplum*. I speak of regal, peaceable, and lawful Parliaments. The King at this time was but a King in name, for *Glocester*, *Leicester* and *Chicester* made choice of other Nine, to whom the rule of the Realm was committed, and the Prince was forced to purchase his liberty from the Earl of *Leicester*, by giving for his ransome the Countrey Palatine of *Chester*. But my Lord, let us judge of those occasions by their events, what became of this proud Earl? was he not soon after slain in *Evesham*? was he not left naked in the field, and left a shameful spectacle, his head being cut off from his shoulders, his privy parts from his body, and laid on each side of his nose? And did not God extinguish his race after which in a lawful Parliamen

liament at *westminster* (confirmed in a following Parliament of *westminster*) were not all the Lords that followed *Leicester* disinherited? And when that fool *Glocester* after the death of *Leicester* (whom he had formerly forsaken) made himself the head of a second Rebellion, and called in strangers, for which not long before he had cryed out against the King, was not he in the end, after that he had seen the slaughter of so many of the Barons, the spoil of their Castles, and Lordships, constrained to submit himself, as all the survivors did, of which they that sped best, payed their fines and ransoms, the King reserving his younger Son, the Earldoms of *Leicester* and *Derby*.

Couns. Well Sir, we have disputed this King to the grave, though it be true, that he out-lived all his enemies, &c brought them to confusion, yet those examples did not terrifie their successors, but the Earl *Marshall*, and *Hereford*, threatned King *Edward* the first, with a new War.

Iust. They did so, but after the death of *Hereford*, the Earl *Marshall* repented himself, and to gain the Kings favour, he made him heir

of all his Lands. But what is this to the Parliament? for there was never King of this Land had more given him for the time of his reign, than *Edward* the Son of *Henry* the third had.

Commf. How doth that appear?

Just. In this sort, my good Lord, in this Kings third year he had given him the fifteenth part of all goods. In his sixth year a twentieth, in his twelfth year a twentieth, in his fourteenth year he had escheage (to wit) forty shillings of every Knights Fee, in his eighteenth year he had the eleventh part of all moveable goods within the Kingdom, in his nineteenth year the tenth part of all Church livings in *England*, *Scotland* and *Ireland* for six years, by agreement from the Pope in his three and twentieth year he raised a tax upon Woolle and fells, and on a day caused all the religious houses to be searched, and all the treasure in them to be seized and brought to his coffers, excusing himself by laying the fault upon his Treasurer: he had also in the end of the same year of all goods of all Burgeses, and of the Commons the tenth part, in the twenty fifth year of the Parliament of *St. Edmundsbury*, he had an eighteenth part of the goods

goods of the Burgesses, and of the people in general, the tenth part. He had also the same year by putting the Clergy out of his protection a fifth part of their goods, and in the same year he set a great tax upon Woolls, to wit, from half a mark to 40 s. upon every sack, whereupon the Earl *Marshall*, and the Earl of *Hertford* refusing to attend the King to *Flanders*, pretended the grievances of the people. But in the end the King having pardoned them, and confirmed the great Charter, he had the ninth peny of all goods from the Lords and Commons; of the Clergy, in the South he had the tenth peny, and in the North the fifth peny. In the two and thirtieth year he had a Subsidy freely granted. In the three and thirtieth year he confirmed the great Charter of his own Royal disposition, and the States to shew their thankfulness, gave the King for one year, the fifth part of all the revenues of the Land, and of the Citizens the sixth part of their goods. And in the same year the King used the Inquisition called *Trai le Baston*. By which all Justices and other Magistrates were grievously fined that had used extor-

tion or bribery, or had otherwise mis-demeaned themselves to the great contentation of the people. This Commission likewise did enquire of Entrudors, Barators, and all other the like Virmine, whereby the King gathered a great mass of treasure with a great deal of love. Now for the whole reign of this King, who governed *England* thirty five years, there was not any Parliament to his prejudice.

Couns. But there was taking of arms by *Marshall* and *Hereford*.

Iust. That's true, but why was that? because the King, notwithstanding all that was given him by Parliament did lay the greatest taxes that ever King did without their consent. But what lost the King by those Lords? one of them gave the King all his lands, and the other dyed in disgrace.

Couns. But what say you to the Parliament in *Edward* the seconds time his successor? did not the house of Parliament banish *Pierce Gaveston* whom the King favoured?

Iust. But what was this *Gaveston* but an Esquier of *Gascoigne*, formerly banisht the Realm by King *Edward* the first, for corrupting the Prince *Edward*, now reigning. And the whole
King-

Kingdom fearing and detesting his
venemous disposition, they besought
his Majesty to cast him off, which the
King performed by an Act of his own,
and not by Act of Parliament, yea,
Goveston's own Father-in-law, the
Earl of *Glocester*, was one of the chief-
est of the Lords that procured it. And
yet finding the Kings affection to fol-
low him so strongly, they all consent-
ed to have him recalled. After which
when his credit so increased, that he
despised and set at naught all the an-
cient Nobility, and not only per-
swaded the King to all manner of
outrages and riots, but withal tran-
sporting what he listed of the Kings
Treasure, and Jewels; the Lords ur-
ged his banishment the second time,
but neither was the first nor second
banishment forced by Act of Parlia-
ment, but by the forceable Lords his
Enemies. Lastly, he being recalled by
the King, the Earl of *Lancaster* caused
his head to be stricken off, when those
of his party had taken him prisoner.
By which presumptuous act, the Earl
and the rest of his company commit-
ted Treason and Murder: Treason by
raising an Army without warrant;
Murder by taking away the life of the
King.

Kings subjects. After which *Garston* being dead, the *Spencers* got possession of the Kings favour, though the younger of them was placed about the King, by the Lords themselves.

Couns. What say you then to the Parliament held at *London* about the sixth year of that King.

Iust. I say that the King was not bound to perform the acts of this Parliament, because the Lords being too strong for the King, enforced his consent, for these be the words of our own History. *They wrested too much beyond the bounds of reason.*

Couns. What say you to the Parliaments of the White wands in the thirteenth of the King?

Iust. I say the Lords that were so moved, came with an Army, and by strong hand surprized the King, they constrained, (saith the story) the rest of the Lords, and compelled many of the Bishops to consent unto them, yea, it saith further, that the King durst not but grant to all that they required, (to wit) for the banishment of the *Spencers*. Yea, they were so insolent, that they refused to lodge the Queen coming through *Kent* in the Castle of *Leedes*, and sent her to provide

provide her lodging where she could get it so late in the night, for which notwithstanding some that kept her out, were soon after taken and hang'd; and therefore your Lordship cannot call this a Parliament for the reasons before alledged. But my Lord, what became of these Law-givers to the King, even when they were greatest, a Knight of the North called *Andrew Herkely*, assembled the forces of the Countrey, overthrew them and their Army, slew the Earl of *Heresford*, and other Barons, took their General *Thomas* Earl of *Lancaster*, the Kings Cozen-germane at that time possessed of five Earldomes, the Lords *Clifford*, *Talbot*, *Moubray*, *Maudint*, *Willington*, *Warren*, Lord *Darcy*, *Withers*, *Knevell*, *Leybourne*, *Bekes*, *Lovell*, *Fitzwilliams*, *Waterwilde*, and divers other Barons, Knights and Esquires, and soon after the Lord *Percy*, and the Lord *Warren* took the Lords *Baldemere*, and the Lord *Audley*, the Lord *Tris*, *Gifford*, *Tuchet*, and many others that fled from the battail, the most of which pass under the hands of the Hang-man, for constraining the King under colour and name of a Parliament. But this, your good Lordship may judge, to whom;

whom, those tumultuous assemblies (which our Histories, falsely call Parliaments have been dangerous, the King in the end ever prevailed, and the Lords lost their lives, and estates. After which the *Spencers* in their banishment at York, in the fifteenth of the King, were restored to their Honours and estates, and therein the King had a Subsidy given him the sixth peny of goods throughout *England, Ireland and Wales.*

Couns. Yet you see the *Spencers* were soon after dissolved.

Just. It is true my Lord, but that is nothing to our subject of Parliament, they may thank their own insolency, for they branded and despised the Queen, whom they ought to have honoured as the Kings wife; they were also exceeding greedy, and built themselves upon other mens ruines; they were ambitious and exceeding malicious, whereupon that came, that when Chamberlain *Spencer* was hang'd in *Hereford*, a part of the twenty fourth Psalm was written over his head: *Quid gloriaris in malitia potens?*

Couns. Well Sir, you have all this while excused your self upon the strength and rebellions of the Lords, but

But what say you now to King Edward the third, in whose time (and during the time of this Victorious King, no man durst take Arms or rebell) the three estates did him the greatest affront that ever King received or endured; therefore I conclude where I began, that these Parliaments are dangerous for a King.

Iust. To answer your Lordship in order, may it please you first to call to mind, what was given this great King by his Subjects before the dispute betwixt him and the house happened, which was in his latter dayes; from his first year to his fifth year there was nothing given the King by his Subjects. In his eighth year at the Parliament at London a tenth and a fifteenth was granted. In his tenth year he seized upon the *Italians* goods here in *England* to his own use, with all the goods of the *Monks Cluniackes* and others, of the order of the *Cisterians*. In the eleventh year, he had given him by the Parliament a notable relief, the one half of the *Woolles* throughout *England*, and of the *Clergy* all their *Woolles*, after which, in the end of the year he had granted in his Parliament at *Westminster*

ster, forty shillings upon every sack of Wooll, and for every thirty Wooll-fells forty shillings, for every last of Leather, as much, and for all other merchandizes after the same rate. The King promising that this years gathering ended, he would thenceforth content himself with the old custom. He had over and above this great aid the eighth part of all goods of all Citizens and Burgeses; and of other, as of forreign Merchants, and such as lived not of the gain of breeding of sheep and cattel, the fifteenth of their goods. Nay my Lord, this was not all, though more than ever was granted to any King, for the same Parliament bestowed on the King the ninth sheaf of all the Corn within the Land, the ninth Fleece, and the ninth Lamb for two years next following; now what thinks your Lordship of this Parliament?

Counf. I say they were honest men.

Just. And I say, the people are as loving to their King now, as ever they were, if they be honestly and wisely dealt withal, and so his Majesty hath found them in his last two Parliaments, if his Majesty had not been.

been betrayed by those whom he most trusted.

Counf. But I pray you Sir, whom shall a King trust, if he may not trust those whom he hath so greatly advanced?

Iust. I will tell your Lordship whom the King may trust.

Counf. Who are they?

Iust. His own reason, and his own excellent Judgement which have not deceived him in any thing, wherein his Majesty hath been pleased to exercise them. *Take Counsel of thine heart* (saith the Book of wisdom) *for there is none more faithful unto thee than it.*

Counf. It is true, but his Majesty found that those wanted no judgement whom he trusted, and how could his Majesty divine of their honesties?

Iust. Will you pardon me if I speak freely, for if I speak out of love, which (as Solomon saith) *covereth all trespasses*; The truth is, that his Majesty would never believe any man that spake against them, and they knew it well enough, which gave them boldness to do what they did.

Counf. What was that?

Iust. Even, my good Lord, to
ruine.

ruine the Kings estate so far as the state of so great a King may be ruin'd by men ambitious and greedy without proportion. It had been a brave increase of revenue, my Lord, to have raised 50000 *l.* land of the Kings to 20000 *l.* revenue, and to raise the revenue of Wards to 20000 *l.* more, 40000 *l.* added to the rest of his Majesties estate, had so enabled his Majesty, as he could never have wanted. And my good Lord, it had been an honest service to the King, to have added 7000 *l.* lands of the Lord Cobham's, his Woods and Goods being worth 30000 *l.* more.

Couns. I know not the reason why it was done.

Just. Neither doth your Lordship, perchance know the reason why the 10000 *l.* offer'd by Swinnerton for a fine of the French Wines, was by the then Lord Treasurer conferr'd on Devonshire and his Mistress.

Couns. What mov'd the Treasurer to reject and cross that raising of the Kings lands?

Just. The reason, my good Lord, is manifest, for had the land been raised, then had the King known when he had given or exchanged land, what

what he had given or exchanged.

Couns. What hurt had been to the Treasurer whose Office is truly to inform the King of the value of all that he giveth?

Just. So he did, when it did not concern himself nor his particular, for he could never admit any one piece of a good Mannor to pass in my Lord *Aubignes* Booke of 1000 l. land, till he himself had bought, and then all the remaining flowers of the Crown were culled out. Now, had the Treasurer suffer'd the King lands to have been raised, how could his Lordship have made choice of the old rents, as well in that book of my Lord *Aubigne*, as in exchange of *Theobalds*, for which he took *Hatfield* in it, which the greatest subject, or favourite Queen *Elizabeth* had, never durst have named unto her by way of gift or exchange. Nay my Lord, so many other goodly Mannors have passed from his Majesty, as the very heart of the Kingdom mourneth to remember it, and the eyes of the Kingdom shed tears continually at the beholding it: yea, the soul of the Kingdom is heavy unto death with the consideration thereof, that so magna-

magnanimous a Prince should suffer himself to be so abused.

Couns. But Sir, you know that *Cobhams* lands were entailed upon his Cousins.

Just. Yea, my Lord, but during the lives and races of *George Brooke* his children, it had been the Kings, that is to say, for ever in effect, but to wrest the King, and to draw the inheritance upon himself, he perswaded his Majesty to relinquish his interest for a pretty sum of money; and that there might be no counter working, he sent *Brook* six thousand pound to make friends, whereof Lord *Hume* had two thousand pound back again, *Buckhurst* and *Barwick* had the other four thousand pound, and the Treasures and his heirs the mass of land for ever.

Couns. What then I pray you came to the King by this confiscation?

Just. My Lord, the Kings Majesty by all those goodly possessions, woods and goods loseth five hundred pound by the year, which he giveth in pension to *Cobham*, to maintain him in prison.

Couns. Certainly, even in conscience they should have reserved so much of the Land in the Crown, as to have

have given Cobham meat and apparel and not made themselves so great gainers, and the King five hundred pound (*per annum*) loser by the bargain, but it's past: *Consilium non est eorum quæ fieri nequeunt.*

Just. Take the rest of the Sentence, my Lord: *Sed consilium versatur in iis quæ sunt in nostra potestate.* It is yet, my good Lord, in potestate Regis, to right himself. But this is not all, my Lord; And I fear me, knowing your Lordships love to the King, it would put you in a feaver to hear all, I will therefore go on with my Parliaments.

Couns. I pray do so, and amongst the rest, I pray you, what say you to the Parliament holden at London in the fifteenth year of King Edward the third?

Just. I say there was nothing concluded therein to the prejudice of the King. It is true, that a little before the sitting of the house, the King displaced his Chancellour and his Treasurer, and most of all his Judges and Officers of the Exchequer, and committed many of them to prison, because they did not supply him with money, being beyond the Seas, for the

the rest, the States assembled, besought the King, that the Laws of the two Charters might be observed, and that the great Officers of the Crown might be chosen by Parliament.

Counj. But what success had these petitions?

Just. The Charters were observed, as before, and so they will be ever, and the other petition was not rejected, the King being pleas'd, notwithstanding, that the great Officers, should take an Oath in Parliament to do Justice. Now for the Parliament of *westminster* in the seventeenth year of the King, the King had three marks and a half for every sack of Wooll transported; and in the eighteenth he had a tenth of the Clergy, and a fifteenth of the Laity for one year. His Majesty forbore after this to charge his Subjects with any more payments, until the twenty ninth of his reign, when there was given the King by Parliament fifty for every sack of Wooll transported for six years, by which grant, the King received a thousand marks a day, a greater matter than a thousand pounds in these dayes, and a 1000 l. a day amounts to 365000 l. a year, which was one of the greatest presents

presents that ever was given to a King of this Land. For besides the cheapness of all things in that age, the Kings soldiers had but 3 d. a day wages, a man at arms 6 d. a Knight but 2 s. In the Parliament at *westminster*, in the three and thirtieth year he had 26 s. 8 d. for every sack of Wooll transported, and in the forty second year 3 disms and 3 fiftens. In his forty fifth year he had 50000 l. of the Laity, and because the Spirituality disputed it, and did not pay so much, the King chang'd his Chancellour, Treasurer, and Privy Seal being Bishops, and placed Lay-men in their room.

Couns. It seems that in those dayes the Kings were no longer in love with their great Chancellors, than when they deserved well of them.

Just. No my Lord, they were not, and that was the reason they were well served, and it was the custom then, and in many ages after, to change the Treasurer and the Chancellor every three years, and withal to hear all mens complaints against them.

Couns. By this often change, the saying is verified, that there is no inheritance in the favour of Kings. He that keepeth the figg-tree (saith Solomon) shall eat the fruit thereof; for

for reason it is that the servant live by the Master.

Just. My Lord, you say well in both, but had the subject an inheritance in the Princes favour, where the Prince hath no inheritance in the Subjects fidelity, then were Kings in more unhappy estate than common persons: for the rest, Solomon meaneth not, that he that keepeth the fig-tree should surfeit, though he meant he should eat, he meant not he should break the branches in gathering the figs, or eat the ripe, and leave the rotten for the owner of the tree; for what saith he in the following chap. he saith, that he that maketh haste to be rich, cannot be innocent. And before that, he saith, that the end of an inheritance hastily gotten, cannot be blessed. Your Lordship hath heard of few or none great with Kings, that have not used their power to oppress, that have not grown insolent and hateful to the people; yea, insolent towards those Princes that advanced them.

Cons. Yet you see that Princes change their fancies.

Just. Yea my Lord, when favourrites change their faith, when they forget that how familiar soever King make

make themselves with their Vassals, yet they are Kings: He that provoketh a King to anger (saith Solomon) sinneth against his own soul. And he further saith, that pride goeth before destruction, and a high mind before a fall. I say therefore, that in discharging those Lucifers, how dear soever they have been, Kings make the world know, that they have more of judgement than of passion; yea, they thereby offer a satisfactory sacrifice to all their people. Too great benefits of subjects to their King, where the mind is blown up with their own deservings, and too great benefits of Kings conferr'd upon their Subjects, where the mind is not qualified with a great deal of modesty, are equally dangerous. Of this later and insolenter, had King Richard the second delivered up to Justice but three or four, he had still held the love of the people, and thereby his life and estate.

Comf. Well, I pray you go on with your Parliaments.

Just. The life of this great King Edward draws to an end, so do the Parliaments of his time, where in fifty years reign he never received any affront, for in his forty ninth year he had a disme

himself and a fifteenth granted him freely.

Couns. But Sir, it is an old saying, that all is well that ends well; Judge you whether that in his fifteenth year in Parliament at *Westminster* he received not an affront, when the house urged the King to remove and discharge from his presence the Duke of *Lancaster*, the Lord *Latimer*, his Chamberlain, Sir *Richard Scurry*, and others whom the King favoured and trusted. Nay, they pressed the King to thrust a certain Lady out of Court, which at that time bore the greatest sway therein.

Just. I will with patience answer your Lordship to the full, and first your Lordship may remember by that which I even now said, that never King had so many gifts as this King had from his subjects, and it hath never grieved the subjects of *England* to give to their King, but when they knew there was a devouring Lady, that had her share in all things that passed, and the Duke of *Lancaster* was as scraping as she, and that the *Chancellor* did eat up the people as fast either of them both. It grieved the subjects to feed these *Cormorants*.

But my Lord there are two things by which the Kings of *England* have been prest, (to wit) by their subjects, and by their own necessities. The Lords in former times were far stronger, more warlike, better followed, living in their Countries, than now they are. Your Lordship may remember in your reading, that there were many Earls could bring into the field a thousand Barbed horses, many a Baron 5 or 600 Barbed horses, whereas now very few of them can furnish twenty fit to serve the King. But to say the truth my Lord, the Justices of peace in *England*, have opposed the injustices of war in *England*, the Kings writ runs over all, and the great Seal of *England*, with that of the next Constables will serve the turn to affront the greatest Lords in *England*, that shall move against the King. The force therefore by which our Kings in former times were troubled is vanished away. But the necessities remain. The people therefore in these latter ages, are no less to be pleased than the Peers; for as the latter are become less, so by reason of the training through *England*, the Commons have all the weapons in their hand.

Couns. And was it not so ever?

Just. No my good Lord; for the Noblemen had in their Armories, to furnish some of them a thousand, some two thousand, some three thousand men, whereas now there are not many that can arm fifty.

Couns. Can you blame them? But I will only answer for my self, between you and me be it spoken; I hold it not safe to maintain so great an Armory or Stable, it might cause me, or any other Nobleman to be suspected, as the preparing of some Innovation.

Just. Why so my Lord, rather to be commended as preparing against all danger of Innovation.

Couns. It should be so, but call your observation to accompt, and you shall find it as I say, for (indeed) such a jealousie hath been held ever since the time of the Civil wars, over the Military greatness of our Nobles, as made them have little will to bend their studies that wayes: wherefore let every man provide according as he is rated in the Muster Book, you understand me.

Just. Very well my Lord, as what might be replied in the perceiving

ving so much ; I have ever (to deal plainly and freely with your Lordship) more fear'd at home popular violence, than all the forraign that can be made, for it can never be in the power of any forraign Prince without a Papistical party, rather to disorder or endanger his Majesties Estate.

Couns. By this it seems, it is no less dangerous for a King to leave the power in the people, than in the Nobility.

Just. My good Lord, the wisdom of our own age, is the foolishness of another, the time present ought not to be preferr'd to the policy that was, but the policy that was to the time present ; so that the power of the Nobility being now withered, and the power of the people in the flower, the care to content them would not be neglected, the way to win them often practised, or at least to defend them from oppression. The motive of all dangers that ever this Monarchy hath undergone, should be carefully heeded ; for this *Maxime* hath no postern, *Potestas humana nō dicatur in voluntatibus hominum*. And now my Lord, for King Edward, it is true, though he were not subject to

force, yet was he subject to necessity, which because it was violent, he gave way unto it, *Potestas* (saith *Pythagoras*) *juxta necessitatem habitat*. And it is true, that at the request of the house he discharged and put from him those before named, which done, he had the greatest gift (but one) that ever he received in all his dayes (to wit) from every person, man and woman, above the age of fourteen years 4 *d.* of old money; which made many Millions of Greats, worth 6 *d.* of our money. This he had in general, besides he had of every beneficed Priest, 12 *d.* and of the Nobility and Gentry, I know not how much, for it is not set down. Now my good Lord, what lost the King by satisfying the desires of the Parliament house, for as soon as he had the money in purse, he recalled the Lords and restored them, and who durst call the King to accompt, when the Assembly were dissolved; where the word of a King is, there is power (saith *Ecclesiasticus*) who shall say unto him, what doest thou? saith the same Author, for every purpose there is a time and judgement, the King gave way to the time, and his judgement perswaded him to yield to necessity, *Consiliarius*

nemo melior est quam tempus.

Counf. But yet you see the King was forced to yield to their demands.

Just. Doth your Lordship remember the saying of *Monfieur de Lange* that he that hath profit of the war, hath also the honour of the war, wiiether it be by battail or retreat, the King you see hath the profit of the Parliament, and therefore the honour also. What other end had the King than to supply his wants? A wise man hath evermore respect unto his ends: and the King also knew that it was the love that the people bare him, that they urged the removing of those Lords, there was no man among them that sought himself in that desire, but they all sought the King, as by the success it appeared. My good Lord, hath it not been ordinary in *England* and in *France* to yield to the demands of rebels? did not King *Richard* the second grant pardon to the outrageous rogues and murtherers that followed *Jack Straw*, and *Wat Tyler*, after they had murdered his Chancellour, his Treasurer, Chief Justice, and others? brake open his Exchequer, and committed

all manner of outrages and villanies, and why did he do it, but to avoid a greater danger? I say the Kings have then yielded to those that hated them and their estates, (to wit) to pernicious rebels. And yet without dishonour. Shall it be called dishonour for the King to yield to honest desires of his subjects? No my Lord, those that tell the King those tales, fear their own dishonour, and not the Kings; for the honour of the King is supreme, and being guarded by Justice and piety, it cannot receive neither wound nor stain.

Couns. But Sir, what cause have any about our King to fear a Parliament?

Just. The same cause that the Earl of *Suffolk* had in *Richard* the seconds time, and the Treasurer *Fartham*, with others, for these great Officers being generally hated for abusing both the King and the Subject, at the request of the States were discharged, and others put in their rooms.

Couns. And was not this dishonour to the King?

Just. Certainly no, for King *Richard* knew that his Grandfather had done the like, and though the
King

King was in his heart utterly against it, yet had he the profit of this exchange; for *Suffolk* was fined at 20000 marks, and 1000 l. lands.

Couns. Well Sir, we will speak of those that fear the Parliament some other time, But I pray you go on with that, that happened in the troublesome reign of *Richard* the second who succeeded, the Grandfather being dead.

Just. That King, my good Lord, was one of the most unfortunate Princes that ever *England* had, he was cruel, extream prodigal, and wholly carried away with his two Minions, *Suffolk*, and the Duke of *Ireland*, by whose ill advice and others, he was in danger to have lost his estate; which in the end (being led by men of the like temper) he miserably lost. But for his subsidies he had given him in his first year being under age two tenths, and two fifteens: In which Parliament, *Alice* *Pierce*, who was removed in King *Edwards* time, with *Lancaster*, *Latimer*, and *Sturrey*, were confiscate and banished. In his second year at the Parliament at *Glocester*, the King had a mark upon every sack of Wooll, and 6 d. the pound upon
wards.

wards. In his third year at the Parliament at *Winchester*, the Commons were spared, and a subsidy given by the better sort, the Dukes gave twenty marks, and Earls six marks, Bishops and Abbots with Mitres six marks, every mark 13 s. 4 d. and every Knight, Justice, Esquire, Sheriff, Parson, Vicar, and Chaplain, paid proportionably according to their Estates.

Couns. This methinks was no great matter.

Just. It is true my Lord, but a little money went far in those days: I my self once moved it in Parliament in the time of Queen *Elizabeth*, who desired much to spare the Common people, and I did it by her Commandment; but when we cast up the subsidy Books, we found the sum but small, when the 30 l. men were left out. In the beginning of his fourth year, a tenth with a fifteen were granted upon condition, that for one whole year no subsidies should be demanded; but this promise was as suddenly forgotten as made, for in the end of that year, the great subsidy of Poll money was granted in the Parliament at *Northampton*.

Couns. Yea but there followed the terrible

terrible Rebellion of *Baker, Straw*, and others, *Leister, Wrais*, and others.

Just. That was not the fault of the Parliament my Lord, it is manifest that the subsidy given was not the cause; for it is plain that the bondmen of *England* begun it, because they were grievously prest by their Lords in the tenure of Villenage, as also for the hatred they bare to the Lawyers and Attorneys: for the story of those times say, that they destroyed the houses and Mannors of men of Law, and such Lawyers as they caught, slew them, and beheaded the Lord chief Justice, which commotion being once begun, the head money was by other Rebels pretended: A fire is often kindled with a little straw, which oftentimes takes hold of greater timber, and consumes the whole building: And that this Rebellion was begun by the discontented slaves (whereof there have been many in Elder times the like) is manifest by the *Charter of Manumission*, which the King granted in *hæc verba*, *Kich. Dei gratiâ, &c. Sciatis quod de gratiâ nostrâ speciali manumissimus, &c.* to which seeing the King was constrained by force of Arms, he revoked the letters *Patenti*,

and made them void, the same revocation being strengthened by the Parliament ensuing, in which the King had given him a subsidy upon Woolls, called a *Maletot*: In the same fourth year was the Lord Treasurer discharged of his Office, and *Hales* Lord of *St. Johns* chosen in his place: in his fifth year was the Treasurer again changed, and the staff given to *Segrave*, and the Lord Chancellour was also changed, and the staff given to the Lord *Scroope*: Which Lord *Scroope* was again in the beginning of his sixth year turned off, and the King after that he had for a while kept the Seal in his own hand, gave it to the Bishop of *London*, from whom it was soon after taken and bestowed on the Earl of *Suffolk*, who they say had abused the King, and converted the Kings Treasure to his own use. To this the King condescended. And though (saith *Walsingham*) he deserved to lose his life and goods, yet he had the favour to go at liberty upon good sureties, and because the King was but young and that the relief granted was committed to the trust of the Earl of *Arundel* for the furnishing of the Kings Navy against the *French*.

Counſ.

Couns. Yet you see it was a dishonour to the King to have his beloved Chancellour removed.

Iust. Truly no, for the King had both his fine 1000 l. lands and a subsidy to boot. And though for the present it pleased the King to fancy a man all the world hated (the Kings passion overcoming his judgement) yet it cannot be called a dishonour, for the King is to believe the general council of the Kingdom, and to prefer it before his affection, especially when *Suffolk* was proved to be false even to the King; for were it otherwise, love and affection might be called a frenzie and a madness, for it is the nature of humane passions, that the love bred by fidelity, doth change it self into hatred, when the fidelity is first changed into falsehood.

Couns. But you see there were thirteen Lords chosen in the Parliament, to have the oversight of the government under the King.

Iust. No my Lord, it was to have the oversight of those Officers, which (saith the story) had imbezeled, lewdly wasted, and prodigally spent the Kings Treasure, for to the Commission to those Lords, or to any six
of

of them, joyn'd with the Kings Council, was one of the most royal and most profitable that ever he did, if he had been constant to himself. But my good Lord, man is the cause of his own misery, for I will repeat the substance of the Commission granted by the King, and confirmed by Parliament, which, whether it had been profitable for the King to have prosecuted, your Lordship may judge. The preamble hath these words: *whereas our Sovereign Lord the King perceiveth by the grievous complaints of the Lords and Commons of this Realm, that the rents, profits, and revenues of this Realm, by the singular and insufficient Counsel and evil government, as well of some his late great Officers and others, &c. are so much withdrawn, wasted, given, granted, alienated, destroyed, and evil dispended, that he is so much impoverished and void of treasure and goods, and the substance of the Crown so much diminished and destroyed, that his estate may not honourably be sustained as appertaineth. The King of his free will at the request of the Lords and Commons, hath ordained William Archbishop of Canterbury and others with his Chancellour, Treasurer, keeper of his privy Seal, to survey*

Survey and examine as well the estate and governance of his house, &c. as of all the rents, and profits, and revenues that to him appertaineth, and to be due, or ought to appertain and be due, &c. And all manner of gifts, grants, alienations and confirmations made by him of lands, tenements, rents, &c. bargained and sold to the prejudice of him and his Crown, &c. And of his jewels and goods which were his Grandfathers at the time of his death, &c. and where they be become.

This is in effect the substance of the commission, which your Lordship may read at large in the book of Statutes, this commission being enacted in the tenth year of the Kings reign. Now if such a commission were in these dayes granted to the faithful men that have no interest in the sales, gifts nor purchases, nor in the keeping of the jewels at the Queens death, nor in the obtaining grants of the Kings best lands, I cannot say what may be recovered, and justly recovered; and what says your Lordship, was not this a noble act for the King, if it had been followed to effect?

Couns. I cannot tell whether it were or no, for it gave power to the
Com-

Commissioners to examine all the grants.

Just. Why my Lord, doth the King grant any thing, that shames at the examination? are not the Kings grants on record?

Counf. But by your leave, it is some dishonour to a King, to have his judgement called in question.

Just. That is true my Lord, but in this, or whensoever the like shall be granted in the future, the Kings judgement is not examined, but their knavery that abused the King. Nay by your favour, the contrary is true, that when a King will suffer himself to be eaten up by a company of petty fellowes, by himself raised, therein both his judgement and courage is disputed. And if your Lordship will disdain it at your own servants hands, much more ought the great heart of a King to disdain it. And surely my Lord, it is a greater treason (though it undercreep the law) to tear from the Crown the ornaments thereof: And it is an infallible maxim, that he that loves not his Majesties estate, loves not his person.

Counf. How came it then, that the act was not executed?

Just.

Just. Because these, against whom it was granted, perswaded the King to the contrary: as the Duke of *Ireland*, *Suffolk*, the chief Justice *Tresilian*, and others; yea, that which was lawfully done by the King, and the great Council of the Kingdom, was (by the mastery which *Ireland*, *Suffolk*, and *Tresilian* had over the Kings affections) broken and disavowed. Those that devised to relieve the King, not by any private invention, but by general Council, were by a private and partial assembly adjudged traitors, and the most honest Judges of the Land, enforced to subscribe to that judgement. In so much that the Judge *Belknap* plainly told the Duke of *Ireland*, and the Earl of *Suffolk*, when he was constrained to set his hand, plainly told these Lords, that he wanted but a rope, that he might therewith receive a reward for his subscription. And in this Council of *Nottingham* was hatched the ruine of those which governed the King, of the Judges by them constrained, of the Lords that loved the King, and sought a reformation, and of the King himself; for though the King found by all the Shrieves of the

the shires, that the people would not fight against the Lords, whom they thought to be most faithful unto the King, when the Citizens of *London* made the same answer, being at that time able to arm 50000 men, and told the Major that they would never fight against the Kings friends, and defenders of the Realm, when the Lord *Ralph Basset*, who was near the King, told the King boldly that he would not adventure to have his head broken for the Duke of *Ireland*s pleasure, when the Lord of *London* told the Earl of *Suffolk* in the Kings presence, that he was not worthy to live, &c. yet would the King in the defence of the destroyers of his estate, lay ambushes to entrap the Lords, when they came upon his faith, yea when all was pacified, and that the King by his Proclamation had clear'd the Lords, and promised to produce *Ireland*, *Suffolk*, and the Archbishop of *York*, *Trisilian*, and *Bramber*, to answer at the next Parliament, these men confest, that they durst not appear; and when *Suffolk* fled to *Callice*, and the Duke of *Ireland* to *Chester*, the King caused an army to be leavied in *Lancashire*, for the safe-conduct of the

the Duke of Ireland to his presence, when as the Duke being encountered by the Lords, ran like a coward from his company, and fled into *Holland*. After this was holden a Parliament, which was called that wrought wonders. In the Eleventh year of this King, wherein the forenamed Lords, the Duke of Ireland and the rest, were condemned and confiscate, the Chief Justice hanged with many others, the rest of the Judges condemned, and banisht, and a tenth and a fifteenth given to the King.

Cons. But good Sir, the King was first besieged in the Tower of *London*, and the Lords came to the Parliament, and no man durst contradict them.

Just. Certainly in raising an Army, they committed treason, and though it appear, that they loved the King (for they did him no harm, having him in their power) yet our law doth construe all levying of war without the Kings commission, and all force raised to be intended for the death and destruction of the King, not attending the sequel. And it is so judged upon good reason, for every unlawful and ill action is supposed
to

to be accompanied with an ill intent. And besides those Lords used too great cruelty, in procuring the sentence of death against divers of the Kings servants, who were bound to follow and obey their Master and Sovereign Lord, in that he commanded.

Couns. It is true, and they were also greatly to blame to cause then so many seconds to be put to death, seeing the principals, *Ireland, Suffolk, and York* had escaped them. And what reason had they to seek to inform the State by strong hand, was not the Kings estate as dear to himself as to them? He that maketh a King know his errour mannerly and privately, and gives him the best advice, he is discharged before God and his own conscience. The Lords might have retired themselves, when they saw they could not prevail, and have left the King to his own wayes, who had more to lose than they had.

Just. My Lord, the taking of Armes cannot be excused in respect of the law, but this might be said for the Lords, that the King being under years, and being wholly governed by
their

their enemies, and the enemies of the Kingdom, and because by those evil mens perswasions, it was advised, how the Lords should have been murdered at a feast in *Lond.* they were excusable during the Kings minority to stand upon their guard against their particular enemies. But we will pass over and go on with our Parliaments that followed; whereof that of *Cambridge* in the Kings 12th year was the next, therein the King had given him a 10th and a 15th, after which being twenty years of age rechanged (saith *H. Knighton*) his Treasurer, his Chancellour, the Justices of either Bench, the Clerk of the privy Seal and others, and took the government into his own hands. He also took the Admirals place from the Earl of *Arundel*, and in his room he placed the Earl of *Huntingdon* in the year following, which was the 13th year of the King. In the Parliament at *westminster* there was given to the King upon every sack of Wool 14 s. and 6 d. in the pound upon other Merchandise.

Couns. But by your leave, the King was restrained this Parliament, that he might not dispose of, but a third part of the money gathered.

Just.

Just. No my Lord, by your favour. But true it is that part of this money was by the Kings consent assigned towards the wars, but yet left in the Lord Treasurers hands, and my Lord it would be a great ease, and a great saving to his Majesty, our Lord and Master, if it pleased him to make his assignations upon some part of his revenues, by which he might have 1000 l. upon every 10000 l. and save himself a great deal of clamour. For seeing of necessity the Navy must be maintained, and that those poor men as well Carpenters as ship-keepers must be paid, it were better for his Majesty to give an assignation to the Treasurer of his Navy for the receiving of so much as is called ordinary, than to discontent those poor men, who being made desperate beggars, may perchance be corrupted by them that lye in wait to destroy the Kings estate. And if his Majesty did the like in all other payments, especially where the necessity of such as are to receive, cannot possibly give days, his Majesty might then in a little while behold his receipts and expences, he might quiet his heart when all necessities were provided for, and

and then dispose the rest at his pleasure. And my good Lord, how excellently and easily might this have been done, if the 40000 l. had been raised as aforesaid upon the Kings lands, and wards? I say that his Majesties House, his Navy, his Guards, his Pensioners, his Munition, his Ambassadours, and all else of ordinary charge might have been defrayed, and a great sum left for his Majesties casual expences and rewards. I will not say they were not in love with the Kings estate, but I say they were unfortunately born for the King that cost it.

Couns. Well Sir, I would it had been otherwise, But for the assignments, there are among us that will not willingly endure it. Charity begins with it self, shall we hinder our selves of 50000 l. *per annum* to save the King 20? No Sir, what will become of our New years gifts, our presents and gratuities? We can now say to those that have warrants for money, that there is not a penny in the Exchequer, but the King gives it away unto the Scots faster than it comes in.

Just. My Lord you say well, at least

least you say the truth, that such are some of our answers, and hence comes that general murmur to all men that have money to receive, I say that there is not a penny given to that Nation, be it for service or otherwise, but is spread over all the Kingdom : yea they gather notes, and take copies of all the privy Seals and warrants that his Majesty hath given for the money for the Scots, that they may shew them in Parliament. But of his Majesties gifts to the English, there is no bruit, though they may be ten times as much as the Scots. And yet my good Lord, howsoever they be thus answered that to them that sue for money out of the Exchequer, it is due to them for ten, or twelve, or twenty in the hundred, abated according to their qualities that sue, they are alwaies furnished, For conclusion, if it would please God to put into the Kings heart to make their assignations, it would save him many a pound, and gain him many a prayer, and a great deal of love, for it grieveth every honest mans heart to see the abundance which even the petty officers of the Exchequer, and others gather both from the King and Subject, and to see a world of poor men
run

run after the King for their ordinary wages.

Counf. Well, well, did you never hear this old tale, that when there was a great contention about the weather, the Seamen complaining of contrary winds, when those of the high Countries desired rain, and those of the valleys sun-shining dayes, *Jupiter* sent them word by *Mercury*, then, when they had all done, the weather should be as it had been. And it shall ever fall out so with them that complain, the course of payments shall be as they have been, what care we what petty fellows say? or what care we for your papers? have we not the Kings ears, who dares contest with us? though we cannot be revenged on such as you are for telling the truth, yet upon some other pretence, we'll clap you up, and you shall sue to us ere you get out. Nay we'll make you confess that you were deceived in your projects, and eat your own words: Learn this of me Sir, that as a little good fortune is better than a great deal of virtue: so the least authority hath advantage over the greatest wit. Was he not the wisest man that said *the battel was*

was not the strongest, nor yet bread for the wise, nor riches to men of understanding, nor favour to men of knowledge : but what time and chance came to them all.

Just. It is well for your Lordship that it is so. But *Qu. Elizabeth* would set the reason of a mean man, before the authority of the greatest Councillor she had, and by her patience therein she raised upon the usual and ordinary customes of *London* without any new imposition above 50000 *l.* a year. For though the Treasurer *Burleigh*, and the Earl of *Leicester* and Secretary *Walshingham*, all three pensioners to Customer *Smith*, did set themselves against a poor waiter of the Custom-house called *Carwarden*, and commanded the Grooms of the privy Chamber not to give him access, yet the Queen sent for him, and gave him countenance against them all. It would not serve the turn, my Lord, with her ; when your Lordships would tell her, that the disgracing her great officers by hearing the complaints of busie heads, was a dishonour to her self, but she had alwayes this answer, *That if any men complain unjustly against a Magistrate, it were reason he should be severely punished, if justly*

ly, she was *Queen of the small*, as well as of the great, and would hear their complaints. For my good Lord, a Prince that suffereth himself to be besieged, forsaketh one of the greatest regalities belonging to a Monarchy, to wit the last appeal, or as the French call it, *le dernier resort*.

Couns. Well Sir, this from the matter, I pray you go on.

Just. Then my Lord, in the Kings fifteenth year he had a tenth and a fifteen granted in Parliament of London. And that same year there was a great Council called at *Stamford*, to which divers men were sent for, of divers Counties besides the Nobility, of which the King took advice whether he should continue the war, or make a final end with the French.

Couns. What needed the King to take the advice of any but of his own Council in matter of peace or war.

Just. Yea my Lord, for it is said in the Proverbs, *where is many counsellors, there is health*. And if the King had made the war by a general consent, the Kingdom in general were bound to maintain the war,
Q and

and they could not then say when the King required aid, that he undertook a needless war.

Couns. You say well, but I pray you go on.

Just. After the subsidy in the fifteenth year, the King desired to borrow 10000 *l.* of the Londoners, which they refused to lend.

Couns. And was not the King greatly troubled therewith?

Just. Yea, but the King troubled the Londoners soon after, for the King took the advantage of a ryot made upon the Bishop of *Salisbury* his men, sent for the Major, and other the ablest Citizens, committed the Major to prison in the Castle of *Windsor*, and others to other Castles, and made a Lord Warden of this City, till in the end what with 10000 *l.* ready money, and other rich presents, instead of lending 10000 *l.* it cost them 20000 *l.* Between the fifteenth year and twentieth year, he had two aides given him in the Parliaments of *Winchester* and *Westminster*: and this latter was given to furnish the Kings journey into *Ireland*, to establish that estate which was greatly shaken since the death of the Kings Grandfather, who received thence

of Parliaments.

thence yearly 30000 l. and during the Kings stay in *Ireland* he had a 10th and 5th granted.

Couns. And good reason, for the King had in his Army 4000 horse and 30000 foot.

Just. That by your favour, was the Kings safety: for great Armies do rather devour themselves than destroy enemies. Such an Army, (whereof the fourth part would have conquered all *Ireland*) was in respect of *Ireland* such an Army as *Xerxes* led into *Greece*. In this twentieth year, wherein he had a tenth of the Clergy, was the great conspiracy of the Kings Uncle the Duke of *Glocester*, and of *Moubrey*, *Arundel*, *Notingham*, and *Warwick*, the Archbishop of *Canterbury* and the Abbot of *Westminster*, and others, who in the one and twentieth year of the King were all redeemed by Parliament. And what thinks your Lordship, was not this assembly of the three states for the Kings estate, wherein he so prevailed, that he not only overthrew those popular Lords, but besides (the English Chronicle saith) the King so wrought and brought things about, that he obtained the power of both Houses to be granted

to certain persons, to fifteen Noblemen and Gentlemen, or to seven of them.

Couns. Sir, whether the King wrought well or ill I cannot judge, but our Chronicles say, that many things were done in this Parliament, to the displeasure of no small number of people, to wit, for that divers rightful heirs were disinherited of their lands and livings, with which wrongful doings the people were much offended, so that the King with those that were about him, and chief in Counsel, came into great infamy and slander.

Just. My good Lord, if your Lordship will pardon me, I am of opinion that those Parliaments wherein the Kings of this Land have satisfied the people, as they have been ever prosperous, so where the King hath restrained the house, the contrary hath happened, for the Kings achievements in the Parliament, were the ready preparations to his ruine.

Couns. You mean by the general discontentment that followed, and because the King did not proceed legally with *Glocester* and others. Why Sir, this was not the first time that
the

the Kings of *England* have done things without the Council of the Land: yea, contrary to the Law.

Just. It is true my Lord in some particulars, as even at this time the Duke of *Glocester* was made away at *Callice* by strong hand, without any lawfull trial: for he was a man so beloved of the people and so allied, having the Dukes of *Lancaster*, and *York* his Brethren, the Duke of *Aumarle*, and the Duke of *Hereford* his Nephews, the great Earls of *Arundel* and *Warwick*, with divers others of his part in the conspiracy, as the King durst not try him according to the Law: for at the tryal of *Arundel* and *Warwick*, the King was forced to entertain a pretty Army about him. And though the Duke was greatly lamented, yet it cannot be denyed but that he was then a traytor to the King. And was it not so my Lord with the Duke of *Guise*? Your Lordship doth remember the spurgal'd proverb, *that necessity hath no Law*: and my good Lord, it is the practice of doing wrong, and of general wrong done, that brings danger, and not where Kings are prest in this or that particular, for there is great dif-

ference between natural cruelty and accidental. And therefore it was *Machiavels* advice, that all that a King did in that kind, he shall do at once, and by his mercy afterwards make the world know that his cruelty was not affected. And my Lord take this for a general rule, that the immortal policy of a State cannot admit any Law or privilege whatsoever, but in some particular or other, the same is necessarily broken, yea in an *Aristocracy* or popular estate, which vaunts so much of equality and common right, more outrage hath been committed than in any *Christian Monarchy*.

Couns. But whence came this hatred between the Duke and the King his Nephew?

Just. My Lord, the Dukes constraining the King, when he was young, stuck in the Kings heart, and now the Dukes proud speech to the King when he had rendred *Brest* formerly engaged to the Duke of *Brittain*, kindled again these Coals that were not altogether extinguished, for he used these words: Your grace ought to put your body in great pain to win a strong hold, or Town by seats of Arms, ere you take upon you to sell or deliver any Town
gotten

gotten by the manhood and strong hand and policy of your noble progenitors. Whereat, saith the story, the King changed his countenance, &c. and to say truth, it was a proud and masterly speech of the Duke; besides that inclusively he taxed him of sloth and cowardise, as if he had never put himself to the adventure of winning such a place: undutiful words of a subject do often take deeper root than the memory of ill deeds do: the Duke of *Biron* found it when the King had him at advantage. Yea the late Earl of *Essex* told Queen *Elizabeth* that her conditions were as crooked as her Carcases: but it cost him his head, which his insurrection had not cost him but for that speech. *who will say unto a King (saith Job) thou art wicked.* Certainly it is the same thing to say unto a Lady, thou art Crooked (and perchance more) as to say unto a King that he is wicked: and to say that he is a coward, or to use any other words of disgrace, it is one and the same error.

Couns. But what say you for *Arundel*, a brave and valiant man, who had the

Kings pardon of his contempt during his minority.

Just. My good Lord, the Parliament which you say disputes the Kings prerogative, did quite contrary, and destroyed the Kings Charter and pardon formerly given to *Arundell*. And my good Lord, do you remember, that at the Parliament that wrought wonders, when these Lords compounded that Parliament, as the King did this, they were so merciless towards all that they thought their enemies, as the Earl of *Arundell* most insolently suffered the Queen to kneel unto him three hours for the saving of one of her servants, and that scorn of his *manebat alta monte repositum*. And to say the truth, it is more barbarous and unpardonable than any act that ever he did, to permit the Wife of his Sovereign to kneel to him being the Kings vassal. For if he had saved her Lords servant freely at her first request, it is like enough that the Queen would also have saved him, *Miseris succurrens paria obtinebis aliquando*: For your Lordship sees that the Earl of *warwick* who was as far in the Treason as any of the rest, was pardoned. It was also at this Parliament

liament that the Duke of Hereford accused Moubray Duke of Norfolk, and that the Duke of Hereford Son to the Duke of Lancaster, was banished to the Kings confusion, as your Lordship well knows.

Counf. I know it well, and God knows that the King had then a silly and weak Council about him, that perswaded him to banish a Prince of the blood, a most valiant man, and the best beloved of the people in general of any man living, especially considering that the King gave every day more than other offence to his subjects. For besides that he fined the inhabitants that assisted the Lords in his Minority (of the seventeen shires) which offence he had long before pardoned, his blank Charters, and letting the Ecclesie to farm to mean persons, by whom he was wholly advised, increased the peoples hatred toward the present government.

Iust. You say well my Lord, Princes of an ill destiny do alwayes follow the worst counsel, or at least imbrace the best after opportunity is lost, *Qui consilia non ex suo corde sed alienis viribus colligunt, non animo sed auribus cogitant.* And this was not the least grief of the

subject in general, that those men had the greatest part of the spoil of the Commonwealth, which neither by virtue, valour or counsel could add any thing unto it -- *Nihil est sordidius, nihil crudelius* (saith *Anto. Pius*) *quam si Remp. ii arroduct, qui nihil in eam suo labore conferunt.*

Couns. Indeed the letting to farm the Realm was very grievous to the subject.

Just. Will your Lordship pardon me if I tell you that the letting to farm of his Majesties Customes (the greatest revenue of the Realm) is not very pleasing.

Couns. And why I pray you, doth not the King thereby raise his profits every third year, and one Farmer outbids another to the Kings advantage?

Just. It is true my Lord, but it grieves the subject to pay custome to the subject ; for what mighty men are those Farmers become, and if those Farmers get many thousands every year, as the world knows they do, why should they not now (being men of infinite wealth) declare unto the King upon Oath, what they have gained, and henceforth become the Kings Collectours of his Custome? Did not
Queen

Queen Elizabeth who was reputed both a wise and just Princess, after she had brought *Customer Smith* from 14000 *l.* a year to 42000 *l.* a year, make him lay down a recompence for that which he had gotten? and if these Farmers do give no recompence, let them yet present the King with the truth of their receivings and profits. But my Lord for conclusion, after *Bullingbrook* arriving in *England* with a small troop, notwithstanding the King at his landing out of *Ireland*, had a sufficient and willing Army, yet he wanting courage to defend his right gave leave to all his Souldiers to depart, and put himself into his hands that cast him into his grave.

Couns. Yet you see he was deposed by Parliament.

Ans. As well may your Lordship say he was knock't in the head by Parliament, for your Lordship knows that if King *Richard* had ever escaped out of their fingers that deposed him, the next Parliament would have made all the deposees Traitors and Rebels, and that justly. In which Parliament, or rather unlawful assembly, there appeared but one honest man, to wit, the B. of *Carlisle*, who scorned

scorned his life, and estate, in respect of right and his Allegiance, and defended the right of his Sovereign Lord against the Kings elect and his partakers.

Couns. Well, I pray go on with the Parliaments held in the time of his Successour *Henry* the fourth.

Just. This King had in his third year a subsidy, and in his fift a tenth of the Clergy without a Parliament; In his sixt year he had so great a subsidy, as the House required there might be no record thereof left to posterity, for the House gave him 20 s. of every Knights Fee, and of every 20 l. land, 20 d. and 12 d. the pound of goods.

Couns. Yea in the end of this year, the Parliament prest the King to annex unto the Crown all temporal possessions belonging to Church-men within the land, which at that time, was the third foot of all *England*. But the Bishops made friends, and in the end saved their estates.

Just. By this you see, my Lord, that *Cromwell* was not the first that thought on such a business. And if King *Henry* the eighth had reserved the Abbyes, and other Church lands, which he had given

given at that time, the revenue of the Crown of *England* had exceeded the revenue of the Crown of *Spain*, with both the *Indies*, whereas used as it was (a little enriched the Crown) served but to make a number of pettifoggers, and others gentlemen.

Counf. But what had the King instead of this great revenue?

Just. He had a fifteenth of the Commons and tenth, and a half of the Clergy, and withall all pensions granted by King *Edward*, and King *Richard* were made void. It was also moved that all Crown lands formerly given (at least given by King *Edward* and King *Richard*) should be taken back.

Counf. What think you of that Sir? would it not have been a dishonour to the King? and would not his Successors have done the like to those that the King had advanced?

Just. I cannot answer your Lordship, but by distinguishing, for where the Kings had given land for services, and had not been over-reached in their gifts, there it had been a dishonour to the King, to have made void the grants of his Predecessors, or his grants, but all those grants of the Kings,

Kings, wherein they were deceived; the very custom and policy of *England* makes them void at this day.

Counf. How mean you that, for his Majesty hath given a great deal of Land among us since he came into *England*, and would it stand with the Kings honour to take it from us again?

Iust. Yea my Lord, very well with the Kings honour, if your Lordship, or any Lord else, have under the name of 100 *l.* land a year, gotten 500 *l.* land, and so after that rate.

Counf. I will never believe that his Majesty will ever do any such thing.

Iust. And I believe as your Lordship doth, but we spake ere-while of those that dissuaded the King from calling a Parliament: And your Lordship asked me the reason, why any man should dissuade it, or fear it, to which, this place gives me an opportunity to make your Lordship answer, for though his Majesty will of himself never question those grants, yet when the Commons shall make humble petition to the King in Parliament, that it will please his Majesty to assist them in his relief, with that which ought to be his own, which, if it will please his Majesty to yield unto, the

the house will most willingly furnish and supply the rest; with what grace can his Majesty deny that honest suit of theirs; the like having been done in many Kings times before? This proceeding my good Lord, may perchance prove all your phrases of the Kings honour, false *English*.

Couns. But this cannot concern many, and for my self, I am sure it concerns me little.

Just. It is true my Lord, and there are not many that dissuade his Majesty from a Parliament.

Couns. But they are great ones, a few of which will serve turn well enough.

Just. But my Lord, be they never so great (as great as Gyants) yet if they dissuade the King from his ready and assured way of his subsistence, they must devise how the King may be elsewhere supplied, for they otherwise run into a dangerous fortune.

Couns. Hold you contented Sir, the King needs no great dissuasion.

Just. My Lord, learn of me, that there is none of you all that can pierce the King. It is an essential property of a man truly wise, not to open all the boxes of his bosome, even to those that are nearest and dearest unto him,

him, for when a man is discovered to the very bottom, he is after the less esteemed. I dare undertake, that when your Lordship hath served the King twice twelve years more, you will find that his Majesty hath reserved somewhat beyond all your capacities. His Majesty hath great reason to put off the Parliament, as his last refuge, and in the mean time, to make tryal of all your loves to serve him, for his Majesty hath had good experience, how well you can serve your selves: But when the King finds, that the building of your own fortunes and factions, hath been the diligent studies, and the service of his Majesty, but the exercises of your pleasures: He may then perchance cast himself upon the general love of his people: of which (I trust) he shall never be deceived, and leave as many of your Lordships as have pilfered from the Crown, to their examination.

Couns. Well Sir, I take no great pleasure in this dispute, go on I pray.

Just. In that Kings fifteenth year, he had also a subsidy; which he got by holding the house together from *Easter*,
to

to *Christmas*, and would not suffer them to depart. He had also a subsidy in his ninth year. In his eleventh year the commons did again press the King to take all the temporalities of the Church men into his hands, which they proved sufficient to maintain an hundred and fifty Earls, 1500 Knights, and 6400 Esquires, with a hundred hospitals, but not prevailing, they gave the King a subsidy.

As for the notorious Prince, *Henry* the sixth, I find, that he had given him in his second year 300000 marks, and after that two other subsidies, one in his fifth year, another in his ninth, without any disputes.

In the time of his successor *Henry* the sixth, there were not many subsidies. In his third year he had a subsidy of a Tunnage and poundage. And here (saith *John Stow*) began those payments, which we call customes; because the payment was continued, whereas before that time it was granted but for a year, two or three, according to the Kings occasions. He had also an ayde and gathering of money in his fourth year, and the like in his tenth year, and in his thirteenth year

year a fifteenth. He had also a fifteenth for the conveying of the Queen out of *France* into *England*. In the twenty eight year of that King was the act of Resumption of all Honours, Towns, Castles, Seigneuries, Villages, Manors, Lands, Tenements, Rents, Reversions, Fees, &c. But because the wages of the Kings servants, were by the strictness of the act also restrained, this act of Resumption was expounded in the Parliament at *Reading* the one and thirtieth year of the Kings reign.

Couns. I perceive that those acts of Resumption were ordinary in former times; for King *Stephen* resumed the Lands, which in former times he had given to make friends during the Civil Wars. And *Henry* the second resumed all (without exception) which King *Stephen* had not resumed; for although King *Stephen* took back a great deal, yet he suffered his truest servants to enjoy his gift.

Just. Yes my Lord, and in after times also; for this was not the last, nor shall be the last, I hope. And judge you my Lord, whether the Parliaments do not only serve the King, whatsoever is said to the contrary;

trary ; for as all King *Henry* the sixth's gifts and grants were made void by the Duke of *York* when he was in possession of the Kingdom by Parliament, so in the time of King *Henry*, when King *Edward* was beaten out again, the Parliament of *Westminster* made all his acts void, made him and all his followers Traytors, and gave the King many of their Heads and Lands. The Parliaments of *England* do alwayes serve the King in possession. It served *Richard* the second to condemn the popular Lords. It served *Bul- linbrook* to depose *Richard*, when *Edward* the fourth had the Scepter. It made them all beggars that had followed *Henry* the sixth. And it was the like for *Henry*, when *Edward* was driven out. The Parliaments are; as the friendship of this world is, which alwayes followeth prosperity. For King *Edward* the fourth after that he was possessed of the Crown, had in his thirteenth year a subsidy freely given him ; and in the year following he took a benevolence through *England*, which arbitrary taking from the people, served that ambitious Traytor the Duke of *Bucks*. After the Kings death
was

was a plausible argument to perswade the multitude, that they should not permit (saith Sir Thomas Moore) his line to raige any longer upon them.

Couns. Well Sir, what say you to the Parliament of *Richard* the third in his time?

Iust. I find but one, and therein he made divers good Laws. For King *Henry* the seventh in the beginning of his third year, he had by Parliament an ayde granted unto him, towards the relief of the Duke of *Brittain*, then assailed by the *French* King. And although the King did not enter into the war, but by the advice of the three Estates, who did willingly contribute: Yet those Northern men which loved *Richard* the third, raised rebellion under colour of the money impos'd, and murdered the Earl of *Northumberland* whom the King employed in that Collection. By which your Lordship sees, that it hath not been for taxes and impositions alone, that the ill disposed have taken Armes; but even for those payments which have been appointed by Parliament.

Couns. And what became of these Rebels?

Iust.

Just. They were fairly hanged, and the money levied notwithstanding. In the Kings first year he gathered a marvellous great mass of money, by a benevolence, taking pattern by this kind of levy from *Edward* the fourth. But the King caused it first to be moved in Parliament, where it was allowed, because the poorer sort were therein spared. Yet it is true, that the King used some art, for in his Letters he declared that he would measure every mans affections by his gifts. In the thirteenth year he had also a subsidy, whereupon the Cornish men took Armes, as the Northern men of the Bishoprick had done in the third year of the King.

Couns. It is without Example, that ever the people have rebelled for any thing granted by Parliament, save in this Kings days.

Just. Your Lordship must consider, that he was not over much beloved, for he took many advantages upon the people and the Nobility both.

Couns. And I pray you what say they now of the new impositions lately laid by the Kings Majesty? do they

they say that they are justly or unjustly laid?

Just. To impose upon all things brought into the Kingdom is very ancient: which imposing when it hath been continued a certain time, is then called Customs, because the subjects are accustomed to pay it, and yet the great tax upon Wine is still called Impost, because it was imposed after the ordinary rate of payment had lasted many years. But we do now a dayes understand those things to be impositions, which are raised by the command of Princes, without the advice of the Common-wealth, though (as I take it) much of that which is now called custome, was at the first imposed by Prerogative Royal. Now whether it be time or consent that makes them just, I cannot define. Were they unjust because new, and not justified yet by time, or unjust because they want a general consent, yet is this rule of Aristotle verified in respect of his Majesty: *Minus timent homines injustum pati à principe quem cultorem Dei putant.* Yea my Lord, they are also the more willingly born, because all the world knows they are no new Invention

vention of the Kings. And if those that advised his Majesty to impose them, had raised his Lands (as it was offered them) to 20000 l. more than it was, and his wards to as much as afore-said, they had done him far more acceptable service. But they had their own ends in refusing the one, and accepting the other. If the Land had been raised, they could not have selected the best of it for themselves; If the impositions had not been laid, some of them could not have their silk: others pieces in farm, which indeed grieved the subject ten times more than that which his Majesty enjoyeth. But certainly they made a great advantage that were the advisers; for if any tumult had followed, his Majesties ready way had been to have delivered them over to the people.

Couns. But think you that the King would have delivered them, if any troubles had followed?

Just. I know not my Lord, it was Machiavels counsel to Caesar Borgia to do it, and King Henry the eighth delivered up Empson and Dudley: yea the same King, when the great Cardinal Woolsey, who governed the
King

King and all his Estate, had (by requiring the sixt part of every mans goods for the King) raised a rebellion, the King I say disavowed him absolutely; that had not the Dukes of *Norfolk* and *Suffolk* appeased the people, the Cardinal had sung no more Mass; for these are the words of our Story: The King then came to *Westminster* to the Cardinals Palace, and assembled there a great Council, in which he protested, that *his mind was never to ask any thing of his Commons which might sound to the breach of his Laws.* Wherefore he then willed them to know by whose means they were so strictly given forth. Now my Lord, how the Cardinal would have shifted himself, by saying, *I had the opinion of the Judges,* had not the rebellion been appeased, I greatly doubt.

Couns. But good Sir, you blanch my question, and answer me by examples. I ask you whether or no in any such tumult, the people pretending against any one or two great Officers, the King should deliver them, or defend them?

Just. My good Lord, the people have not stayed for the Kings delivery,
nei-

neither in *England*, nor in *France* ; Your Lordship knows how the Chancellour, Treasurer, and Chief Justice, with many others at several times have been used by the Rebels : And the Marshals, Constables, and Treasurers in *France*, have been cut in pieces in *Charles* the sixth his time. Now to your Lordships question , I say that where any man shall give a King perilous advice , as may either cause a Rebellion, or draw the peoples love from the King, I say, that a King shall be advised to banish him : But if the King do absolutely command his servant to do any thing displeasing to the Common-wealth , and to his own peril, there is the King bound in honour to defend him. But my good Lord for conclusion, there is no man in *England* that will lay any invention either grievous or against Law upon the Kings Majesty : and therefore your Lordships must share it amongst you.

Counf. For my part, I had no hand in it, (I think) *Ingram* was he that propounded it to the Treasurer.

Just. Alas , my good Lord , every poor Waiter in the Custom-House, or every Promooter might have done it, there is no invention in these things.

R

To

To lay impositions, and sell the Kings lands, are poor and common devices. It is true that *Ingram* and his fellows are odious men, and therefore his Majesty pleas'd the people greatly to put him from the Coffership. It is better for a Prince to use such a kind of men, than to countenance them ; hang-men are necessary in a Common-wealth, yet in the *Netherlands*, none but a hang-mans son will marry a hang-mans daughter. Now my Lord, the last gathering which *Henry* the seventh made, was in the twentieth year, wherein he had another benevolence both of the Clergy and Laity, a part of which taken of the poorer sort, he ordained by his testament that it should be restored. And for King *Henry* the eighth, although he was left in a most plentiful estate, yet he wonderfully prest his people with great payments ; for in the beginning of his time it was infinite that he spent in Masking and Tilting, Banqueting, and other vanities, before he was entred into the most consuming expence of the most fond and fruitless war that ever King undertook. In his fourth year he had one of the greatest subsidies that ever was granted ; for besides two fifteens

teens and two dismes, he used *Dauids* Law of Capitation or head-money, and had of every Duke ten marks, of every Earl five pounds, of every Lord four pounds, of every Knight four marks, and every man rated at eight pound in goods four marks, and so after the rate: yea, every man that was valued but at forty pound, paid twelve pence, and every man and woman above fifteen years, four pence. He had also in his sixth year divers subsidies granted him. In his fourteenth there was a tenth demanded of every mans goods, but it was moderated. In the Parliament following, the Clergy gave the King the half of their spiritual livings for one year, and of the Laity there was demanded 200000*l.* which could not be levyed in *England*, but it was a marvellous great gift that the King had given him at that time. In the Kings seventeenth year was the Rebellion before spoken of, wherein the King disavowed the Cardinal: In his seventeenth year he had a tenth and fifteenth given by Parliament, which were before that time paid to the Pope. And before that also, the moneys that the King borrowed

in his fifteenth year were forgiven him by Parliament in his seventeenth year. In his thirty fifth year a subsidy was granted of four pence the pound of every man worth in goods from 20 s. to 5 l. from 5 l. to 10 l. and upward of every pound 2 s. And all strangers, denizens and others doubled this sum, strangers not being inhabitants above sixteen years 4 d. a head. All that had Lands, Fees, and Annuities, from 20. to 5. and so double as they did for goods : And the Clergy gave 6 d. the pound. In the thirty seventh year, a Benevolence was taken not voluntary, but rated by Commissioners, which because one of the Aldermen refused to pay, he was sent for a Souldier into *Scotland*. He had also another great subsidy of six shillings the pound of the Clergy, and two shillings eight pence of the goods of the Laity, and four shillings the pound upon Lands.

In the second year of *Edward* the sixth, the Parliament gave the King an aid of twelve pence the pound of goods of his Natural subjects, and two shillings the pound of strangers, and this to continue for three years, and by the Statute of the second and third of *Edward* the sixth, it may appear the

the same Parliament did also give a second aid, as followeth (to wit) of every Ewe kept in several pastures, three pence, of every Weather kept as aforesaid two pence, of every Sheep kept in the Common three half pence. The House gave the King also eight pence the pound of every Woollen cloath made for the sale throughout *England* for three years. In the third and fourth of the King, by reason of the troublesome gathering of the pole money upon Sheep, and the tax upon Cloath, this act of subsidy was repeal'd, and other relief given the King, and in the seventh year he had a Subsidy and two fifteenths.

In the first year of *Queen Mary*, tunnage and poundage were granted: In the second year a Subsidy was given to King *Philip*, and to the Queen, she had also a third Subsidy in *Annis 4 & 5.*

Eliz. Reg. Now my Lord, for the Parliaments of the late Queens time, in which there was nothing new, neither head-money, nor sheep-money, nor escuage, nor any of these kinds of payments was required, but only the ordinary subsidies, and those as easily granted as demanded, I shall not need to trouble your Lordship with a-

ny of them, neither can I inform your Lordship of all the passages and acts which have passed, for they are not extant, nor printed.

Couns. No, it were but time lost to speak of the latter, and by those that are already remembred, we may judge of the rest, for those of the greatest importance are publick. But I pray you deal freely with me, what you think would be done for his Majesty, if he should call a Parliament at this time, or what would be required at his Majesties hands?

Just. The first thing that would be required, would be the same that was required by the Commons in the thirteenth year of Henry the eighth (to wit) that if any man of the Commons house should speak more largely, than of duty he ought to do, all such offences to be pardoned, and that to be of record.

Couns. So might every Companion speak of the King what they list.

Just. No my Lord, the reverence which a Vassal oweth to his Sovereign, is alwayes intended for every speech, howsoever it must import the good of the King, and his estate, and so long it may be easily pardoned, otherwise

otherwise not; for in Queen *Elizabeths* time, who gave freedom of speech in all Parliaments, when *Wentworth* made those motions, that were but supposed dangerous to the Queens estate, he was imprisoned in the Tower, notwithstanding the priviledge of the house, and there dyed.

Counf. What say you to the *Sicilian vespers* remembred in the last Parliament?

Just. I say, he repented him heartily that used that speech, and indeed besides that it was seditious, this example held not: The *French* in *Sicily* usurped that Kingdom, they neither kept law nor faith; they took away the inheritance of the Inhabitants, they took from them their wives, and ravished their daughters, committing all other insolencies that could be imagined. The Kings Majesty is the Natural Lord of *England*, his Vassals of *Scotland* obey the *English* Laws, if they break them, they are punished without respect. Yea, his Majesty put one of his Barons to a shameful death, for being consenting only to the death of a common Fencer: And which of these ever did or durst commit any outrage in *England*,

but to say the truth, the opinion of packing the last, was the cause of the contention and disorder that happened.

Couns. Why Sir? do you not think it best to compound a Parliament of the Kings servants and others that shall in all obey the Kings desires?

Just. Certainly no, for it hath never succeeded well, neither on the Kings part, nor on the subjects, as by the Parliament before remembred, your Lordship may gather, for from such a composition do arise all jealousies and all contentions. It was practised in elder times, to the great trouble of the Kingdom, and to the loss and ruine of many. It was of later time used by King *Henry* the eighth, but every way to his disadvantage. When the King leaves himself to his people, they assure themselves that they are trusted and beloved of their Kings, and there was never any assembly so barbarous, as not to answer the love and trust of their King. *Henry* the sixth when his estate was in effect utterly overthrown, and utterly impoverished, at the humble request of his Treasurer made the same known to the House: Or otherwise, using the Treasurers own words, He humbly desired

fired the King to take his staff, that he might save his wardship.

Couns. But you know, they will presently be in hand with those impositions, which the King hath laid by his own Royal Prerogative.

Just. Perchance not my Lord ; but rather with those impositions that have been by some of your Lordships laid upon the King which did not some of your Lordships fear more than you do the impositions laid upon the Subjects, you would never dissuade his Majesty from a Parliament: For no man doubted, but that his Majesty was advised to lay those impositions by his Council, and for particular things on which they were laid, the advice came from petty fellows (though now great ones) belonging to the Custom-House. Now my Lord, what prejudice hath his Majesty (his Revenue being kept up) if the impositions that were laid, were laid by the general Council of the Kingdom, which takes off all grudging and complaint.

Couns. Yea Sir, but that which is done by the King, with the advices of his private or privy Council, is done by the Kings absolute power.

Just. And by whose power it is
R s. done

done in Parliament, but by the Kings absolute power? Mistake it not my Lord: The three Estates do but advise, as the Privy Council doth, which advice if the King embrace, it becomes the Kings own Act in the one, and the Kings Law in the other; for without the Kings acceptation, both the publick and private advices be but as empty Egg-shells: and what doth his Majesty lose, if some of those things, which concern the poorer sort, be made free again, and the Revenue kept up upon that which is superfluous? Is it a loss to the King to be beloved of the Commons? If it be revenue which the King seeks, is it not better to take it of those that laugh, than those that cry? Yea, if all be content to pay upon moderation and change of the Species, is it not more honourable and more safe for the King, that the Subject pay by perswasion, than to have them constrained? If they be contented to whip themselves for the King, were it not better to give them the Rod into their hands, than to commit them to the Executioner? Certainly it is far more happy for a Sovereign Prince, that a Subject open his purse willingly, than that the same be opened by violence.

Be-

Besides, that when impositions are laid by Parliament, they are gathered by the authority of the Law, which (as aforesaid) rejecteth all complaints, and stoppeth every mutinous mouth: It shall ever be my prayer, that the King embrace the Council of Honour and Safety, and let other Princes imbrace that of force.

Commf. But good Sir, it is his Prerogative which the King stands upon, and it is the Prerogative of the Kings, that the Parliaments do all diminish.

Jud. If your Lordship would pardon me, I would say then, that your Lordships objection against Parliaments is ridiculous. In former Parliaments three things have been supposed dishonour to the King. The first, that the Subjects have conditioned with the King, when the King hath needed them, to have the great Charter confirmed. The second that the Estates have made Treasurers for the necessary and profitable disbursing of those summs by them given, to the end, that the Kings, to whom they were given, should expend them for their own defence, and for the defence of the Common-wealth. The third that these have prest the King to discharge some great Officers of the Crown,

Crown, and to elect others. As touching the first my Lord, I would faine learn what disadvantage the Kings of this Land have had by confirming the great Charter, the breach of which have served only men of your Lordships rank, to assist their own passions, and to punish and imprison at their own discretion the Kings poor Subjects, concerning their private hatred, with the colour of the Kings service. For the Kings Majesty takes no mans inheritance (as I have said before) nor any mans life, but by the Law of the Land, according to the Charter. Neither doth his Majesty imprison any man (matter of practice, which concerns the preservation of his estate excepted) but by the Law of the land. And yet he useth his Prerogative as all the Kings of *England* have ever used it. The supream reason causeth to practise many things without the advice of the Law. As for insurrections and rebellions, it useth the Marshal, and not the Common Law, without any breach of the Charter, the intent of the Charter considered truly. Neither hath any Subject made complaint, or been grieved, in that the Kings of this Land, for their own safeties, and preservation
of

of their estates, have used their Prerogatives, the great Engine, on which there is written *Joli Deo*. And my good Lord, was not *Buckingham* in *England*, and *Byron* in *France* condemned, their Peers uncalled? And withal, was not *Byron* utterly (contrary to the customs and priviledges of the *French*) denied an Advocate to assist his defence? for where Laws forecast cannot provide remedies for future dangers, Princes are forced to assist themselves by their *Prerogatives*. But that which hath been ever grievous, and the cause of many troubles, very dangerous, is, that your Lordships abusing the reasons of State, do punish and imprison the Kings Subjects at your pleasure. It is you my Lords, that when Subjects have sometimes need of the Kings Prerogative, do then use the strength of the Law, and when they require the Law, you afflict them with the Prerogative, and tread the great Charter (which hath been confirmed by sixteen Acts of Parliament) under your feet, as a torn parchment or waste paper?

Couns. Good Sir, which of us do in this sort break the great Charter? perchance you mean, that we have advised the King to lay the new impositions.

Just.

Just. No my Lord : there is nothing in the great Charter against impositions: and besides that, necessity doth perswade them. And if necessity do in somewhat excuse a private man, *a fortiori* it may then excuse a Prince. Again, the Kings Majesty hath profit and increase of revenue by the impositions. But there are of your Lordships (contrary to the direct Letter of the Charter) that imprison the Kings Subjects, and deny them the benefit of the Law, to the Kings disprofit. And what do you otherwise thereby (if the impositions be in any sort grievous) but *Renovare dolores*? And withal digg out of the dust the long buried memory of the Subjects former contentions with their Kings.

Couns. What mean you by that?

Just. I will tell your Lordship when I dare, in the mean time it is enough for me to put your Lordship in mind, that all the Estates in the World, in the offence of the people, have either had profit or necessity to perswade them to adventure it, of which, if neither be urgent, and yet the Subject exceedingly grieved, your Lordship may conjecture, that the House will be humble suitors for a redress.

dress. And if it be a Maxim in policy to please the people, in all things indifferent, and never suffer them to be beaten, but for the Kings benefit (for there are no blows forgotten with the smart but these) then I say to make them Vassals to Vassal, is but to batter down those mastering buildings, erected by *Hen. 7. &* fortified by his Son, by which the people and Gentry of *England* were brought to depend upon the K. alone. Yea my good Lord, our late dear Sovereign *Q. Eliz.* kept them up, and to their advantage, as well repaired as ever Prince did; Defend me, and spend me, saith the *Irish Churl*.

Couns. Then you think that this violent breach of the Charter will be the cause of seeking the confirmation of it in the next Parliament, which otherwise could never have been moved.

Just. I know not my good Lord, perchance not, for if the House press the King to grant unto them all that is theirs by the Law, they cannot (in Justice) refuse the King all that is his by the Law. And where will be the issue of such a contention? I dare not divine, but sure I am, that it will tend to the prejudice both of the King and Subject.

Couns. If they dispute not their own liberties, why should they then dispute

dispute the Kings liberties, which we call his Prerogative.

Just. Among so many and so divers Spirits, no man can foretell what may be propounded, but howsoever, if the matter be not slightly handled on the Kings behalf, these disputes will soon dissolve, for the King hath so little need of his Prerogative, and so great advantage by the Laws, as the fear of impairing the one, to wit, the Prerogative is so impossible, and the burthen of the other, to wit, the Law, so weighty, as but by a branch of the Kings Prerogative, namely, of his remission and pardon, the Subject is no way able to undergo it. This my Lord is no matter of flourish that I have said, but it is the truth, and unanswerable.

Couns. But to execute the Laws very severely, would be very grievous.

Just. Why my Lord, are the Laws grievous which our selves have required of our Kings? And are the Prerogatives also which our Kings have received to themselves also grievous? How can such a people then be well pleased? And if your Lordship confess that the Laws give too much, why does your Lordship urge the Prerogative that gives more? Nay, I will be bold to say it, that except the Laws
were

were better observed, the Prerogative of a Religious Prince hath manifest less perils than the Letter of the Law hath. Now my Lord, for the second and third, to wit, for the appointing of Treasurers, and removing of Counsellors, our Kings have evermore laught them to scorn that have prest either of these, and after the Parliament dissolved, took the money of the Treasurers of the Parliament, and recalled and restored the Officers discharged, or else they have been contented, that some such persons should be removed at the request of the whole Kingdom, which they themselves out of their Noble natures, would not seem willing to remove.

Couns. Well Sir, Would you notwithstanding all these arguments, advise his Majesty to call a Parliament?

Just. It belongs to your Lordships who enjoy the Kings favour, and are chosen for your able wisdom to advise the King. It were a strange boldness in a poor and private person, to advise Kings attended with so understanding a Council. But be like your Lordships have conceived some other way, how money may be gotten otherwise. If any trouble should happen,
you

dispute the Kings liberties, which we call his Prerogative.

Just. Among so many and so divers Spirits, no man can foretell what may be propounded, but howsoever, if the matter be not slightly handled on the Kings behalf, these disputes will soon dissolve, for the King hath so little need of his Prerogative, and so great advantage by the Laws, as the fear of impairing the one, to wit, the Prerogative is so impossible, and the burthen of the other, to wit, the Law, so weighty, as but by a branch of the Kings Prerogative, namely, of his remission and pardon, the Subject is no way able to undergo it. This my Lord is no matter of flourish that I have said, but it is the truth, and unanswerable.

Couns. But to execute the Laws very severely, would be very grievous.

Just. Why my Lord, are the Laws grievous which our selves have required of our Kings? And are the Prerogatives also which our Kings have received to themselves also grievous? How can such a people then be well pleased? And if your Lordship confess that the Laws give too much, why does your Lordship urge the Prerogative that gives more? Nay, I will be bold to say it, that except the Laws were

were better observed, the Prerogative of a Religious Prince hath manifold less perils than the Letter of the Law hath. Now my Lord, for the second and third, to wit, for the appointing of Treasurers, and removing of Counsellors, our Kings have evermore laught them to scorn that have prest either of these, and after the Parliament dissolved, took the money of the Treasurers of the Parliament, and recalled and restored the Officers discharged, or else they have been contented, that some such persons should be removed at the request of the whole Kingdom, which they themselves out of their Noble natures, would not seem willing to remove.

Couns. Well Sir, Would you notwithstanding all these arguments, advise his Majesty to call a Parliament?

Just. It belongs to your Lordships who enjoy the Kings favour, and are chosen for your able wisdom to advise the King. It were a strange boldness in a poor and private person, to advise Kings attended with so understanding a Council. But be like your Lordships have conceived some other way, how money may be gotten otherwise. If any trouble should happen,
you

Lordship knows, that then there were nothing so dangerous for a King as to be without money: A Parliament cannot assemble in haste, but present dangers require hasty remedies. It will be no time then to discontent the subjects by using any unordinary wayes.

Couns. Well Sir, all this notwithstanding we dare not advise the King to call a Parliament, for if it should succeed ill, we that advise should fall into the Kings disgrace. And if the King be driven into any extremity, we can say to the King, that because we found it extreemly unpleasing to his Majesty to hear of a Parliament, we thought it no good manners to make such a motion.

Just. My Lord, to the first let me tell you, that there was never any just Prince that hath taken any advantage of the success of Counsels, which have been founded on reason. To fear that, were to fear the loss of the bell, more than the loss of the steeple, and were also the way to beat all men from the studies of the Kings service. But for the second, where you say you can excuse your selves upon the Kings own protesting against a Parliament, the King upon better consideration may encounter that fineness of yours.

Couns.

Couns. How I pray you?

Iust. Even by declaring himself to be indifferent, by calling your Lordships together, and by delivering unto you that he hears how his loving subjects in generall are willing to supply him, if it please him to call a Parliament, for that was the common answer to all the Sheriffs in *England*, when the late benevolence was commanded. In which respect and because you come short in all your projects, and because it is a thing most dangerous for a King to be without treasure, he requires such of you, as either mislike, or rather fear a Parliament, to set down your reasons in writing, for which you either misliked, or feared it. And such as wish and desire it, to set down answers to your objections: and so shall the K. prevent the calling or not calling on his Majesty, as some of your great Councillors have done in many other things, shrinking up their shoulders, and saying the King will have it so.

Couns. Well Sir, it grows late, and I will bid you farewell, only you shall take well with you this advice of mine, that in all that you have said against our greatest, those men in the end shall be your Judges in their own cause, you that trouble your self with reformation,
are.

are like to be well rewarded, hereof you may assure your self, that we will never allow of any invention how profitable soever, unless it proceed, or seem to proceed from our selves.

Just. If then my Lord, we may presume to say, that Princes may be unhappy in any thing, certainly they are unhappy in nothing more than in suffering themselves to be so inclosed. Again, if we may believe *Pliny*, who tells us, that 'tis an ill sign of prosperity in any Kingdom of state, where such as deserve well, find no other recompence than the contentment of their own consciences, a far worse sign is it where the justly accused shall take revenge of the just accuser. But my good Lord, there is this hope remaining, that seeing he hath been abused by them he trusted most, he will not for the future dishonour his judgement (so well informed by his own experience) as to expose such of his Vassals (as have had no other motives to serve him, than simply the love of his person and his estate) to their revenge, who have only been moved by the love of their own fortunes, and their glory.

Counf. But good Sir, the King hath not been deceived by all.

Just.

Just. No my Lord, neither have all been trusted, neither doth the world accuse all, but believe, that there be among your Lordships very just and worthy men, as well of the Nobility as others, but those though most honoured in the Common-wealth, yet have not been most imployed. Your Lordship knows it well enough, that three or four of your Lordships have thought your hands strong enough to bear up alone the weightiest affairs in the Commonwealth, and strong enough all the Land have found them to beat down whom they pleased.

Counf. I understand you, but how shall it appear, that they have only sought themselves?

Just. There needs no perspective-glass to discern it, for neither in the treaties of Peace and War, in matters of Revenue, & matters of Trade, any thing hath happened either of love or of judgement. No my Lord, there is not any one action of theirs eminent, great or small, the greatness of themselves only excepted.

Counf. It is all one, your Papers can neither answer nor reply we can. Besides, you tell the King no news in delivering these Complaints, for he knows as much as can be told him.

Just.

Just. For the first my Lord, whereas he hath once the reasons of things delivered him, your Lordships shall need to be well advised in their answers; there is no sophistry will serve the turn, where the Judge, and the understanding are both supream. For the second, to say that his Majesty knows and cares not, that my Lord, were but to despair all his faithful Subjects. But by your favour my Lord, we see it is contrary, we find now that there is no such singular power as there hath been, Justice is described with a Balance in her Hand, holding it even, and it hangs as even now as ever it did in any Kings dayes, for singular authority begets but general oppression.

Couns. Howsoever it be, that's nothing to you, that have no interest in the Kings favour, nor perchance in his opinion, and concerning such a one, the misliking or but misconceiving of any one hard word, phrase, or sentence, will give argument to the King either to condemn or reject the whole discourse. And howsoever his Maj. may neglect your informations, you may be sure that others (at whom you point) will not neglect their revenges, you will therefore confess it (when it is too late) that you are exceeding sorry that you have not followed

lowed my advice. Remember Cardinal *woolfsey*, who lost all men for the Kings service, and when their malice (whom he grieved) had out-lived the Kings affection, you know what became of him as well I.

Just. Yea my Lord, I know it well, that malice hath a longer life, than either love or thankfulness hath, for as we alwayes take more care to put off pain, than to enjoy pleasure, because the one hath no intermission, and with the other we are often satisfied; so it is in the smart of injury and the memory of good turns: *Wrongs are written in marble: Benefits are (sometimes) acknowledged, rarely requited.* But my Lord, we shall all do the King great wrong, to judge him by common rules, or ordinary examples, for seeing his Majesty hath greatly enriched and advanced those that have but pretended his service, no man needs to doubt of his goodness towards those that shall perform any thing worthy reward. Nay, the not taking knowledge of those of his own Vassals that have done him wrong, is more to be lamented, than the relinquishing of those that do him right, is to be suspected. I am therefore, my good Lord, held to my resolution by these two besides the former. The first, that

that God would never have blest him with so many years, and in so many actions, yea, in all his actions had he paid his honest servants with evil for good. The second, where your Lordship tells me, that I will be sorry for not following your advice, I pray your Lordship to believe, that I am no way subject to the common sorrowing of worldly men, this *Maxim* of Plato being true, *Dolores omnes ex amore animi erga corpus nascuntur*. But for my body, my mind values it at nothing.

Couns. What is it then you hope for, or seek?

Just. Neither riches, nor honour, or thanks, but ohly seek to satisfie his Majesty (which I would have been glad to have done in matters of more importance) that I have lived, and will dye an honest man.

F I N I S.





REMAINS

of *S^r Walter Raleigh;*

Printed

Maxims of State.

Advice to his Son: his Son's advice to
his Father.

His Sceptick.

Observations concerning the causes of
the Magnificency and Opulency of
Cities.

Sir Walter Raleigh's Observations concern-
ing Trade and Commerce with the
Holland and other Nations. Proving
that our Sea and Land Commodities
enrich and strengthen other Coun-
treys against our own.

His Letters to diverse Persons of Quality.
The Prebative of Parliaments in En-
gland, proved in a Dialogue between
a Councillor of State and a Justice of
Peace.

L O N D O N,

Printed for *Henry Mortlock*, at
the *Phoenix* in *St. Paul's Church-
yard*, and at the *White Hart* in
Strand.

The Contents.

O <i>F. Government.</i>	Page 1.
<i>Of Policy.</i>	2.
<i>Of Monarchy.</i>	3.
<i>Of Aristocracy, or Senatorial State.</i>	5.
<i>Of Free State, or Popular State.</i>	6.
<i>Of Tyranny.</i>	7.
<i>Of Oligarchie, or the Government of a few.</i>	ibid.
<i>Of a Common-wealth.</i>	8.
<i>Of Causes of States, and Common-wealths in general.</i>	10.
<i>Of Founding a State.</i>	ibid.
<i>Of Causes preserving State or Common-wealth.</i>	15.
<i>Of Mysteries or Sophisms.</i>	ibid.
<i>Of Axioms or Rules of preserving a State.</i>	20.
<i>Rules for preserving a Hereditary of a Kingdom.</i>	23.
<i>Kingdoms hereditary are preserved at home by the ordering of a Prince.</i>	
<i>Kingdoms new gotten, or purchased by force, are preserved by ten Rules.</i>	

The Contents.

Rules of Policy of Tyrants.	41.
Sophisms of a Barbarous professed tyranny.	42.
Sophisms of the sophistical, or subtle Tyrant, to hold up his State.	46.
Of preservation of an Aristocracy.	52.
Of preservation of an Oligarchie, by Rules.	ibid.
Of Conversion of States in general.	59.
Causes of Conversions of States are of two sorts: General and Particular.	ibid.
Particular Causes of Conversion of States are of two sorts.	60.
Of Sedition.	61.
Causes of sedition are of two sorts.	ibid.
Of Alteration without violence.	64.
A Method, how to make use of the Book before, in the reading of the story.	67.
Old age is not ever unfit for publick Government.	ibid.
Example of the like practice in Charles the Fifth.	68.
Of observation for the Affirmative and the Negative.	ibid.
Of defence for David in marrying Abishag.	70.
Political Nobility.	
Of Adonijah aspiring to the Kingdom.	71.
Observations.	
Of ways of such as aspire to the Kingdom and marks to discern them.	73.
Political Prince.	75.

The TABLE of the Chapters con-
tained in Sir Walter Raleigh's Instructi-
ons to his Son.

Chap.

Pag.

Vicious persons to be made choice of
for Friends.

Great care to be had in the choosing of a
wife.

Wise men have been abused by flatterers.

Private Quarrels to be avoided.

Three Rules to be observed for the preserva-
tion of a mans estate.

What sort of servants are most fit to be en-
tertained.

Brave rags wear soonest out of fashion.

Riches not to be sought by evil means.

What Inconveniencies happen to such as de-
light in Wine.

Let God be thy Protector and Director in
all thy Actions.

The Sceptick doth neither affirm, neither de-
ny any Position, but doubtech of it, and
proposeth his Reason against that which
is affirmed or denyed, to justify his not
consenting.

Observations concerning the causes of the
Magnificency and Opulency of Cities.

Safety for defence of the people and their
goods in and near a Town.

THE TABLE.

Causes that concern the Magnificency of a City.

That the State of Government is upheld by the two great Pillars thereof, viz. Civil Justice, and Martial Policy: which are framed out of Husbandry, Merchandise, and Gentry of this Kingdom.

Mr Walter Raleigh's Observations touching Trade and Commerce with the Hollander and other Nations, proving that our Sea and Land Commodities enrich and strengthen other Countreys against our own.

Mr Walter Raleigh's letter to Mr. Secretary Winwood before his Journey to Guiana.

To his wife from Guiana.

To Mr Ralph Winwood.

To his wife copied out of his own handwriting.

To his wife after Condemnation.

To King James at his return from Guiana.

His third Letter to Secretary Winwood.

His Letter to Prince Henry touching the Model of a Ship.

His Speech immediately before he was beheaded.

The Privilege of Parliaments in England, proved in a Dialogue between a Councillor of State and a Justice of Peace.

These

These Books following are printed
for Henry Mortlock, at the Phoenix in
St. Paul's Church-yard, and the White
Hart in Westminster-Hall.

DELIGHTS in several shapes, drawn to
the life in six several shapes, plea-
sant Histories, by that famous Spaniard
Don Mignel de Cervantes Samedra, the
same that wrote Don Quixote, in folio.
OPOTONIA, seu Tractatus de
Tonis in Lingua Græcica: per R. Frank-
lin: in 8vo.

The Charitable Physician, & the Cha-
ritable Apothecary, translated out of
French by John Warner, late Practitioner
in Physick and Chyrurgerie, in 4to.

The History of Mary Queen of Scots,
written by Sir William Widdel, in 8vo.

The Common-wealth of Ethiopia,
written by the Right Honourable
Sir Thomas Moor, sometimes Lord Chan-
cellor of England, in 12mo.

The History of Edward the Fifth, and
the then Duke of York his Brother,

with the troublesome and tyrannical
Government of *Richard the third*, and
his miserable end, written by the
Right Honourable Sir *Thomas More*,
late Lord Chancellor of England, in
12110.

A Choice Manual, or rare and select
Secrets in Physick and Chyrurgerie, col-
lected and practised by the Right Ho-
nourable the Countess of *Kent* late de-
ceased. Printed in 120 and in 240.
Whereunto is added most exquisite
wayes of Preserving, Conserving, and
Candying.

The History of the Lives and Reign
of *Henry III.* and *Henry IV.* written by
Sir *John Hayward*, and Sir *Robert Cor-
ten*, in 12110.

The Key of History, or a most Me-
thodical abridgement of the four chief
Monarchies, *Babylon, Persia, Greece, and
Rome*, being a general and compendi-
ous Chronicle from the Flood, writ-
ten by that excellent and most learned
man *John Sleiden*.

Lucius Ebrahima, or the Civil Wars
of *Rome* between *Pompey the Great*,
and *Julius Caesar* in 10 Books, English-
ed by *Thomas May*, Esq; whereunto is
added a Continuation of the subject of
Lucius Historical Poem till the death
of

of *Julius Caesar*, by the same Author in

2vo.

The Country-mans Recreation, or the art of Planting, Grafting, and Gardening, in three Books, with the perfect platform of a Hop-Garden, to which is added the expert Gardener, and the art of Angling, in 4to.

A Paradise of Prayers, in 12mo.

Mr. John Marston's six Playes, in 8vo.

Fragmenta Regalia, or Observations on the late Queen Elizabeth her times and Favourites, written by Sir Robert Naunton Master of the Court of Wards, in 12mo.

Gayton's Notes upon Don Quixote, in

folio.

An exact collection of the choicest and most rare Experiments and Secrets in Physick and Chyrurgerie, by Leonard Phioravanti Knight, and Dr. In Physick and Chyrurgerie: whereunto is added Paracelsus his one hundred and fourteen Experiments, in 4to.

Several Poems written by Mr. Line-

ylth in 8vo.

Martial his Epigrams translated with sundry Poems and Fancies, by R. Fletcher in 9vo large.

Balm of Gilead, by Jo. Hall Bishop of

Notwich, in 12mo.

The

The Treasurers Almanack, in 8vo.

The Art of Memory, in 8vo.

Queen Elizabeth's Clofet, or Physical Secrets, and supplied with the Child-bearers Cabinet; and Preservative against the Plague, and the Small Pox: Collected by the elaborate pains of four famous Physicians, and presented to Queen Elizabeth's own hands, in 4to.

Calvepo's Physical and Chymical way of curing the most difficult and incurable diseases, in 8vo.

A Box of Spikenard, or a little Manual of Sacramental Instruction and Devotion; especially helpful to the people of God, at and about the receiving of the Lords Supper: Written by Thomas Walmesley Dean of Worcester, in 240.

ΠΑΡΕΚΒΟΛΑΙ, five *Excerpta in sex priores Homeri Illados Libros*: Studio Matthæi Day: in 8vo.

The Ogllo of Traytors, including the Illegal Tryal of his late Majesty, in 8vo.

Capital Hereticks, in 12mo.

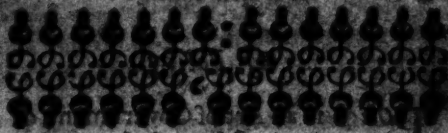
Leicester's Common wealth, in 4to.

A Triple Reconciler: Written by Tho. Fuller B. of Divinity, in 8vo large.

The Coming Lovers: A Play in 4to.

The Virgin Martyr: A Play in 4to.

MAXIMS



MAXIMS

OF STATE.

OF GOVERNMENT.

GOVERNMENT is of two sorts: 1. *Private*, Of himself, *Sobriety*; Of his Family, called *Order*. 2. *Publick*, of the Common-wealth, called *Policy*. A man must first Govern himself, ere he be fit to Govern a Family; And his Family, ere he be fit to bear the Government in the Common-wealth.

Of Policy.

Policy is an Art of Government of a Commonwealth, and some part of it according to that State, or form of Government, wherein it is settled for the publick good.

State, is the frame or set order of a Commonwealth; or of the Governours that rule the same, especially of the chief and Sovereign Governour that commandeth the rest.

The State of Sovereignty consisteth in five points.

1. Making or annulling of Laws.
2. Creating and disposing of Magistrates.
3. Power over life and death.
4. Making of War or Peace.
5. Highest or last appeal.

Where these five are, either in one or in two, there is the State.

These five points of State, rest either in one or in two.

One is Monarchy or Kingdom, holding in some few chief men for virtue and wisdom, called in *Greek* *Aristocracy*: or many, called a *Pro-Praty*, or *Popular State*.

These three sorts of Government have

43

a
of
of
for
a
rs
le
it
n

1. **Monday - 21 January. Tyranny.**

...of two lots touching

2. *Drift* 3. *Common*

or Government of
all the

all the common
and better sort and

and baster fort, and
therefore called

therefore called a
commonwealth

3. Popular 01 : an unfulfilled

State. There is no doubt that the people of the State are entitled to the same rights as the people of the other States.

NOT RECORDED

no full power in all the points of my

Monarchy, or Kingdoms, are of three sorts touching the right or possession of them, *viz.*

1. *Hereditary*, by descent, as the *English*, *French*, &c.

2. *Elective*, by suffrage of the other *Orders*, or some of them, as the *Polonian*.

3. *Mixt*, or of both kinds, *viz.* by descent, yet not tied to the next of blood, as the ancient *Jewish State*.

Monarchies are of two sorts touching their power, or Authority, *viz.*

1. *Large*. Where the whole power of ordering all *State* matters, both in peace and war, doth by law and custom appertain to the Prince, as in the *English Kingdom*; where the Prince hath power to make Laws, League, and War; to create Magistrates; to pardon life; to appeal, &c. Though to give a consent to the other Degrees, they have a suffrage in making Laws, yet ever subject to the Princes pleasure, nor Negative will.

2. *Limited or restrained*, that hath no full power in all the points or matters of State, as the *Military King* that hath not the Sovereignty in time of peace, as the making of Laws, &c. But in War only, as the *Polonian Kings*.

II.

Aristocracy, or Senatory State.

AN *Aristocracy* is the Government of a Commonwealth by some competent number of the better sort, preferred for wisdom and other virtues for the publick good.

Aristocracies are of three sorts, viz. Where the *Senators* are chosen, for
1. *Virtue, Riches, and the common good, as the Venetian.*

2. *Virtue, and the publick good without respect of wealth, as sometimes the Roman, when some of the Senators were fetched from the plough, and some from the Schools.*

3. *Virtue and wealth, more respecting their private, than their publick good, which inclineth towards an Oligarchy, or the Government of the Richer or Nobler sort, as in Rome towards the end.*

III.

III.

Free State, or Popular State.

THE *Popular State* is the Government of a *State* by the choicer sort of people, tending to the publick good of all sorts; viz. with due respect of the better, Nobler, and Richer sort.

In every *Free State*, some part of the Government is, or ought to be imparted to the people; As in a Kingdom a voice or suffrage in making Laws: And sometimes also, in levying of Armes. (If the charge be great, and the Prince forced to borrow help of his Subjects.) the matter rightly may be propounded to a Parliament, that the tax may seem to have proceeded from themselves. So consultations, and some proceedings in Judicial matters, may in part be referred to them. The reason, lest seeing themselves to be in no number, nor of reckoning, they mislike the state, or kind of Government: And where the multitude is discontented, there must needs be many Enemies to the present *State*. For which cause, Tyrants,

(which

(which allow the people no manner of dealing in State matters) are forced to bereave them of their wits and weapons, and all other means whereby they may resist, or amend themselves, as in *Russland, Turkey, &c.*

IV.

Tyranny.

A Tyranny is the swerving, or distorting of a *Monarchy*, or the Government of one, tending not to the publick good, but the private benefit of himself and his followers. As in the *Russ* and *Turkish* Government, where the State and wealth of other orders, are employed only to the upholding of the greatness of the King or Emperour. This is the worst of all the *Ballard States*, because it is the perverting of the best Regiment, to wit, of a *Monarchy*, which resembleth the Sovereign Government of God himself.

V.

Oligarchy, or the Government of a few.

A N *Oligarchy* is the swerving, or the corruption of an *Aristocracy*.

Sir Walter Raleigh's

As the Government of some few, so are
the Wealthier or Nobler sort, with-
out any respect of the publick Good.
The chief end of these *Governours*, is
their own greatness and enriching.
And therefore their manner is, to pre-
serve all means to uphold their Estates.
This State is not wholly so bad, as is
the *Tyranny*, and yet worse than the
Common-wealth, because it respecteth the
good of a few.

THOUGHTS UPON GOVERNMENT

VI

OF THE

Common-wealth.

A *Common-wealth* is the swerving or
depravation of a Free, or popular
State, or the Government of the whole
multitude of the base and poorer sort,
without respect of the other Orders.

There are States, to wit, The *Oli-
garchy*, and *Common-wealth*, are very ad-
verse one to the other, and have
many bickerings between them. For
the Richer or Nobler sort, suppose
a right or superiority to appertain unto
them in every respect, because they are
superior, but in some respects only,
to wit, in Riches, Birth, Parentage, &c.

On the other side, the *Common people*
suppose there ought to be an equality
in

Various of State.

in all other things, and some *State* matters; because they are equal with the Rich or Noble, touching their *Liberty*, whereas indeed neither the one nor the other are simply equal or superior, as touching *Government* and fitness thereunto, because they are such, to wit, because they are Rich, Noble, Free, &c. but because they are *wise*, *Virtuous*, *Valiant*, &c. and so have fit parts to *Govern a State*.

The several *States* are sometimes mixed, and inter-wrought one with the other, yet ever so, as that the one hath the preheminent predomination over the other, as in the humours and complexions of the body. So in the *Roman State*, the people had their *Privileges*, and gave the suffrage in the election of Magistrates: Yet the *Senate* (as the *State* stood) for the most part governed the *State*, and bare the chief rule. As in the *Venetian State*, the Duke seemed to represent a *Monarch*, and the *Senate* to be his Council: Yet the Duke had no power in *State* matters, but in like a head set on by art, that beareth no brain. And so that *State* is *Senatorial* or *Arifocratical*.

Causes

Causes of States and Commonwealths in general

Causes of States or Commonwealths are of three sorts.

1. *Founding* or settling a State, where to be considered.
2. *Preserving* a State.
3. *Changing*, and altering a State.

Measure, Parts, and their Qualities.

Founding a State is the first and most difficult part of the government. It is to be considered in three things: 1. *Proportion*, 2. *Parts*, 3. *Qualities*.

Proportion is a just measure of the power of the state, whereby it is framed and kept in that Order, that neither it exceed nor be defective in his kind. It is to be considered in three things: 1. *Proportion*, 2. *Parts*, 3. *Qualities*.

1. *Proportion* is to be considered in three things: 1. *Proportion*, 2. *Parts*, 3. *Qualities*.

2. *Parts* is to be considered in three things: 1. *Proportion*, 2. *Parts*, 3. *Qualities*.

3. *Qualities* is to be considered in three things: 1. *Proportion*, 2. *Parts*, 3. *Qualities*.

communicate with the people some commodities of State or Government as the *Prætor* and sometimes the *Roman* was allowed the people to elect certain Magistrates out of themselves to have a Tribune to make *Placita* &c. So a *Free State* or *Commonwealth* that it be not over popular. That it deprecate not too much the richer wiser nor learned sort; but admit them to offices with a *Caution* out of the rules and maxims of that State. That they seek no alteration of the present State. The reason, because the *moderate States* in their several kinds (as all other things that observe the mean) are best framed for their continuance, because they give less cause of grudge, envy, and affecting the *wealth*, *Honour*, and *Liberty* which they see in others that govern the State; and so are less subject to furs and commotions, and easiest kept in their present State wherein they are let

This part of the State or Commonwealth consists of Magistrates that bear place or sway in the publick Government.

Parts or partakers of Publick Government, are

1. Cons

1. *Council or Senate*, which consist of all matters pertaining to War and Peace, Magnificence, &c. in administration of whom there ought to be a more special care, that they may be men expert in *matter of Policy*; because it is their *Trade and Profession*, as men are to their *Factor and Masters of Ships*, such as know the *Art of Navigation*, and not Husband-men, &c. And in the contrary.

2. *Magistrates and Officers*, which are to be executioners of that which is consulted, and found to be expedient for the *Commonwealth*, wherein are to be observed, the kinds of Magistrates, that they be such as fit that kind of Government; The time of their continuance, and the manner of their election or appointing, by whom, out of whom, and in what manner they be chosen.

3. *Judges*, To determine in *Civil and Criminal matters*, where are to be observed, out of whom they are to be chosen; what kinds are necessary, and the manner of *Judgment* and *Judicial proceeding*.

in the public Government.

210

In Magistrates are to be observed

1. Kinds of Magistrates, as,

1. Civil.

1. *Superiours* which are to be such and of that kind as agree with the *State*, as *Consuls* for a year, and not perpetual *Dictators* in a *Senatory State*. *Prators*, and *Censors*, that oversee manners & orders of the people.

For a Kingdom, *Lieutenants* of *Shires*, *Marshalls*, *Masters* of *Horse*, *Admirals*, &c.

Inferiours, as *conservatores* of *Peace*, *Constables*, &c.

Overseers of youth, that take care for their education for civil and warlike exercise.

B

clerks

Clarks of the Market that provide for the quantity, and price of victual.

Ediles for Buildings, Streets, Bounds.

Questours, or *Treasurers*, to keep and dispense the publick Treasury.

Actuaries, or *Recorders*, which keep the publick Record.

Gaolers to keep *Prisons* and *Prisoners*.

Shurveyors of Woods and Fields, &c.

2. Ecclesiastical.

1. As *Bishops* or *Pastors*, *Elders*, *Wardens*.

2. *Time* of *Magistrates*, whereof some are perpetual, some for a time, viz. for more years, a year, half a year, according to the necessity of the *Common-wealth*, & not perpetual; or at least not *Hereditary* in a Kingdom. Yearly in an *Aristocracy*, or half yearly

Maxims of State.

11

yearly in a *Free-State*.

3. *Manner* of choice, by whom and how to be chosen, where especially they are to be chosen by *Suffrage*, and not by *Lot*.

Causes of preserving a State, or Commonwealth.

In pre-
serving
of States
2. things
requi-
red.

1. *Mysteries,*
or *Sophisms.*

1. *General*, to
all States.

2. *Particular*,
for every se-
veral State.

2. *Rules, or*
Actions.

1. *General*, for
all States.

2. *Particular*,
for every
State.

Mysteries or Sophisms.

Mysteries, or *Sophisms* of State, are certain secret practices, either for the avoiding of danger, or averting such effects as tend to the pre-
B 2

vation of the present *State*, as it is set of founded.

State Myſteries are of two ſorts.

1. *General* : That pertain to all *States*; as firſt, to provide by all means, that the ſame degree, or part of the *Common-wealth*, do not exceed both in *Quantity* and *Quality*. In *Quantity*, as that the number of the *Nobility*, or of great perſons, be not more, than the *State* or *Common-wealth* can bear. In *Quality*, as that none grow in Wealth, Liberty, Honours, &c. more than it is meet for that degree; For as in weights, the heavier weights bear down the Scale: So in *Common-wealths*, that part of degree that excelleth the reſt in *Quality* and *Quantity*, overſwayeth the reſt after it, whereof follow alterations, and converſions of *State*. Secondly, to provide by all means, that the middle ſort of people exceed both the extreams, (*viz.*) of *Nobility* and *Gentry*, and the baſe rascal, and beggarly ſort. For this maketh the *State* conſtant and firm, when both the *Extreams* are tyed together by a middle ſort, as it were with a band; as for any conſpiracy of the rich and beggarly ſort together, it is not to be feared. To theſe two points, the *Particu-*

lar

lar rules in *Sophisms* of every *Common-wealth*, are to be applyed.

2. *Particular* : That serve for preservation of every *Common-wealth*, in that form of *State* wherein it is settled as in a Kingdom. That the *Nobility* may be accustomed to bear the *Government* of the *Prince* ; especially such as have their dwelling in remote places from the *Princes* eye, it is expedient to call them up at certain times to the *Princes Court*, under pretence of doing them honour, or being desirous to see, and enjoy their presence, and to have their children, especially their eldest, to be attendant upon the *Prince*, as of special favour towards them and theirs, that so they may be trained up in duty and obedience towards the *Prince*, and be as *Hostages* for the good behaviour, and faithful dealing of their Parents, especially, if they be of any suspected note. To that end serves the *Persian* practice, in having a Band, or Train of the *Satrapa's* children, and other Nobles to attend the Court ; which was well imitated by our Train of *Henchmen*, if they were of the Nobler sort. Again, sometimes to borrow small summs of his Subjects, and to pay them again, that he may after borrow

greater summs and never pay: So in an *Oligarchie*, lest it decline to a *Popular State*, they deceive the people with this and the like *Sophisms*, (*viz.*) They compell their own sort, to wit, the rich men, by great penalties, to frequent their Assemblies for choosing of Magistrates, for provision of Armour, warlike Exercises, making an Execution of Laws, &c. By that means seeming to bear a hard hand over the richer, but to suffer the poorer, and meaner sort to be absent, and to neglect these Assemblies under pretence, that they will not draw them from their business, and private earnings: Yet withal to cite thither some few of them, (*viz.*) so many as are easily over-matched by the richer sort, to make a shew, that they would have the people or poorer sort partakers likewise of those matters, yet terrifying those that come to their Assemblies, with the tediousness of consultations, greatness of Fines, if they should mis-do, to the end, to make them unwilling to come again, or to have to do with those consultations, by which means, the richer sort do still govern the state, with the peoples liking, and good contentment.

Axiom

Axioms.

Axioms or
Rules of pre-
serving the
State are,

1. General, that serve for
all Common-wealths.
2. Particular, that serve
for every several State.

General Rules.

THE first and principal Rule of Policy to be observed in all States, is to profess, and practise, and maintain the true worship and Religion of Almighty God prescribed unto us in his word, which is the chief end of all Government. The Axiom, That God be obeyed simply without exception, though he command that which seemeth unreasonable, and absurd to Human policy; as in the Jews Commonwealth: That all the men should repair yearly to one place to worship God four times, leaving none to defend their coast, though being beset with many Enemies: Nor to sow the seventh year, but to suffer the ground to rest untill without respect or fear of famine, &c.

E 4.

2. To

2. To avoid the causes of *Conversion*, whereby States are overthrown, that are set down in the Title of *conversions*: For that *Common-wealths* (as natural bodies) are preserved by avoiding that which hurte the health and *State* thereof, and are so cured by contrary medicines.

3. To take heed, that no *Magistrate* be created or continued, contrary to the Laws and policy of that *State*. As that in a *Senate*, there be not created a perpetual *Dictator*, as *Cæsar* in *Rome*. In a Kingdom, that there be no *Senate*, or *Convention* of equal power with the Prince in *State* matters, as in *Poland*.

4. To create such *Magistrates* as love the *State* as it is settled, and take heed of the contrary practices, as to advance Popular persons in a Kingdom, or *Aristocracy*. And secondly, to advance such as have skill to discern what doth preserve, and what hurteth or altereth the present *State*.

5. To that end to have certain Officers to pry abroad, and to observe such as do not live and behave themselves in fit sort agreeable to the present *State*, but desire rather to be under some other form, or kind of *Government*.

4. To

6. To take heed that Magistracies be not sold for money, nor bribe in their Offices, which is especially to be observed in that *Common-wealth*, which is governed by a few of the richer sort; For if the Magistrate gain nothing but his *Common Fees*, the common sort, and such as want honour, take in good part that they be not preferred: and are glad rather that themselves are suffered to intend private business. But if the *Magistrate* buy and sell matters, the common people are doubly grieved, both because they are debar'd of those preferments, and of that gain they see to grow by them, which is the cause that the *German Oligarchies* continue so firm, for both they suffer the poorer sort to grow into wealth, and the richer sort are by that means freed, and secured from being under the poor.

7. To take heed that the *State*, as it is settled and maintained, be not over-strict, nor exceed in his kind; (*viz.*) That a Kingdom be not too Monarchical, nor a *Popular State* too Popular: For which cause it is good, that the Magistrates sometimes yield of their right touching honour, and behave themselves familiarly with those that are equal unto them in other parts, though

Inferiour for place and office ; And sometimes popularly with the common people, which is the cause that some *Common-wealths*, though they be very simply, and unskillfully set, yet continue firm, because the Magistrates be have themselves wisely, and with due respect towards the rest that are without honour ; and therefore some kind of *Moderate Popularity* is to be used in every *Common-wealth*.

8. To take heed of small beginnings, and to meet with them even at the first, as well touching the breaking and altering of Laws, as of other rules which concern the continuance of every several State. For the disease and alteration of a *Common-wealth*, doth not happen all at once, but grows by degrees, which every common wit cannot discern, but men expert in **POLICY**.

9. To provide that that part be ever the greater in number and power, which favours the State as now it stands. This is to be observed as a very Oracle in all *Common-wealths*.

10. To observe a mean in all the degrees, and to suffer no part to exceed, or decay overmuch. As first for pre-fer-

ferments, to provide that they be rather small and short, than great and long; and if any be grown to overmuch greatness, to withdraw or diminish some part of his honour. Where these *Sophisms* are to be practised (*viz.*) to do it by parts and degrees; to do it by occasion, or colour of law, and not all at once. And if that way serve not, to advance some other, of whose virtue and faithfulness, we are fully assured, to as high a degree, or to a greater honour, and to be the friends and followers of him that excelleth, above that which is meet. As touching wealth, to provide, that those of the middle sort (as before was said) be more in number; and if any grow high, and over-charged with wealth, to use the *Sophisms* of a *Populart State*, *viz.* to send him on Embassages, and Forreign Negotiations, or imploy him in some Office that hath great charges, and little honour, &c. To which end, the *Edileship* served in some Commonwealths.

11. To suppress the Factions, and quarrels of the Nobles, and to keep other that are yet free from joyning with them in their partakings and Factions.